

Summary of Proposed Changes

Table of Contents

***Document Modification History* 2**

***1. Introduction* 2**

***2. Project Overview* 2**

***3. Project Scope*..... 2**

***4. Summary of Proposed Changes* 5**

***5. Next Steps*..... 28**

Document Modification History

Version	Status	Release date	Summary of changes
1.0	Current	29 Feb. 2026	Document published

1. Introduction

This summary of the proposed changes aims to inform stakeholders of the proposed changes under consideration, in preparation for the upcoming public and government consultation period for this project. It provides:

- an overview of the project's scope, including the purpose of the affected qualification/s
- a summary of the proposed changes to the qualifications and unit/ of competency
- consultation plan, and next steps.

The aim is to ensure stakeholders have a clear understanding of the proposed revisions, the reasons behind them, and how they can meaningfully contribute to shaping the future of these training products during the consultation.

2. Project Overview

This project is part of HumanAbility's suite of training product development initiatives aimed at ensuring qualifications, skill sets and units remain current, industry-relevant and responsive to emerging workforce needs.

A Technical Committee, drawing on expertise across industry, regulatory and provider domains, have guided the development of the draft training products.

A consultation log will be maintained and published to ensure transparency and traceability of stakeholder feedback and project responses.

Once feedback is considered and revisions incorporated, where compliant with the Training Package Organising Framework, the final drafts will be submitted for endorsement and, if approved, implemented and published on the National Training Register.

3. Project Scope

The primary objective of this project is to review 3 dental assisting, 1 dental technology and 1 dental prosthetics qualifications and 46 units of competency within the *HLT Health Training Package*, with an aim of restructuring and redesigning these components to address current and future skill needs, regulatory requirements, the latest technology and sustainable career pathways to support existing and future growth in the industry.

Qualifications

The purpose of these 5 qualifications is to support a specific occupation.

- *HLT35021 Certificate III in Dental Assisting*
- *HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting*
- *HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting*
- *HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology*
- *HLT65015 Advanced Diploma of Dental Prosthetics*

Units of Competency

- *HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures*
- *HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography*
- *HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice*
- *HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program*
- *HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia*
- *HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedations*
- *HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice*
- *HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image*
- *HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image*
- *HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people*
- *HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program*
- *HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models*
- *HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph*
- *HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan*
- *HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia*
- *HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting*
- *HLTDEP001 Identify, select and prepare instruments, equipment and materials*
- *HLTDEP002 Gather data, conduct dental prosthetic examination and develop treatment plan*
- *HLTDEP003 Take impressions*
- *HLTDEP004 Establish and record jaw relationships and select artificial teeth*
- *HLTDEP005 Evaluate a removable dental prosthesis at try-in stage*
- *HLTDEP006 Insert and issue a completed removable dental prosthesis*
- *HLTDEP007 Perform maintenance treatment for clients with removable dental prostheses*
- *HLTDEP008 Construct and insert an implant retained overdenture*
- *HLTDET001 Construct models*
- *HLTDET002 Construct custom impression trays*
- *HLTDET003 Construct registration rims*
- *HLTDET004 Articulate models and transfer records*
- *HLTDET005 Construct thermoformed bases and appliances*
- *HLTDET006 Construct immediate dentures*
- *HLTDET007 Construct removable acrylic partial dentures*
- *HLTDET008 Construct cast removable alloy partial denture framework*

- *HLTDET009 Construct crown and bridge structures*
- *HLTDET010 Join alloy structures*
- *HLTDET011 Construct ceramic and fixed restorations*
- *HLTDET012 Construct orthodontic appliances*
- *HLTDET013 Construct oral splints*
- *HLTDET014 Repair and modify dentures and appliances*
- *HLTDET015 Construct complete removable acrylic dentures and appliances*
- *HLTDET016 Design digital dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided design (CAD)*
- *HLTDET017 Construct dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)*
- *HLTINF002 Process reusable medical devices and equipment*
- *HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues*
- *HLTOHC008 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health*
- *HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products*
- *HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish*

Skill Set

- *HLTSS00072 Dental Radiography Skill Set*
- *HLTSS00073 Oral Health Care Skill Set*

4. Summary of Proposed Changes

4.1 Qualifications

Table 1: Proposed changes to *HLT35021 Certificate III in Dental Assisting*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Description	No change
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be added after finalisation of units
Packaging Rules	No change
Core units	No change
Elective units	No change

Table 2: Proposed changes to *HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Description	<p>Reworded to: This qualification reflects the role of workers who provide an advanced level of assistance to dental practitioners which contributes to the quality of oral health care.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State or Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice. Dental radiography work must only be performed by a person with a radiation user licence granted by the relevant State /Territory regulatory authority under legislation.</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be added after finalisation of units
Packaging Rules	No change
	Unit under review include:
Core units	HLTSTE003 Sterilise loads

Elective units	Unit deleted from TGA TLIP Develop workplace policy and procedures
-----------------------	---

Table 3: Proposed changes to *HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Description	<p>Reworded to: This qualification reflects the role of dental laboratory assistants, who provide foundational support in the construction of dental appliances and prostheses. They develop the knowledge and practical skills to pour impressions, produce custom trays, manufacture occlusal registration rims, transfer oral records, articulate models, and construct mouthguards.</p> <p>They are equipped to contribute effectively to laboratory workflows, ensuring the accurate and safe preparation of dental devices according to professional standards and organisational procedures.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be added after finalisation of units
Packaging Rules	No change
Core units	No change
Elective units	No change

Table 4: Proposed changes to *HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Description	<p>Reworded to: This qualification reflects the role of a Dental Technician who constructs, modifies, and repairs dental appliances, including dentures, crowns, bridges, partial dentures, orthodontic appliances, and pre- and post-oral or maxillofacial surgical devices. Dental technicians work in dental laboratories, independently or as part of a team, under the direction of dentists, dental prosthetists, or dental specialists, applying knowledge of dental materials, prosthetic techniques, anatomy, occlusion, and infection prevention. They use skills in fabrication, adjustment, evaluation, and</p>

repair of dental appliances, maintain laboratory equipment, and accurately document and manage work records, while adhering to **quality, occupational safety, and workplace standards**.

The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.

Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be added after finalisation of units
Packaging Rules	No change
Core units	No change
Elective units	No change

Table 5: Proposed changes to *HLT65015 Advanced Diploma of Dental Prosthetics*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
	Reworded to: This qualification reflects the role of a dental prosthetist who works as independent practitioners in the assessment, treatment, management of a person who requires provision of removable dentures; and who also provides unique flexible removable mouthguards used for sporting activities.
Description	To achieve this qualification, the candidate must have completed at least of 240 hours of dental prosthetist clinical practice work as detailed in the Assessment Requirements of the units of competency.
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be added after finalisation of units
Packaging Rules	No change
Core units	No change
Elective units	No change

4.2 Units of Competency

Table 6: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Unit description	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to prepare the dental surgery including equipment, instruments and materials, for dental procedures and assist the practitioner during dental procedures.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and those carrying out dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of a dental practitioner.</p>
Elements and performance criteria	PC's have been reworded throughout document to ensure it aligns with TPOF and include current terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units

Table 7: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to prepare patients for dental radiography. It also describes the skills and knowledge to process and mount conventional dental radiographs.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Knowledge Evidence	Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions	Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 8: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice*

Section		Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
		Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required for a dental assistant to assist the practitioner by managing appointments to suit the patient and the organisation, recording and reconciling payments, and maintaining patient records.
Application		<p>This unit applies to dental assistants who assist with administration in dental practice.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria		Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes		New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Performance Evidence		Updated terminology
Knowledge Evidence		Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions		Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 9: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program*

Section		Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
		Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to implement an individualised oral hygiene program and promote oral health.
Application		<p>This unit applies to dental assistants and to other health care workers who are actively involved in promoting the general well-being of patients through promotion of healthy eating habits and good oral health.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria		Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes		New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Performance evidence		Updated terminology

Knowledge evidence	Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions	Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 10: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to assist the practitioner in carrying out dental procedures on patients under general anaesthesia.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 11: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedations*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to assist the practitioner in carrying out dental procedures on patients under conscious sedation administered via intravenous, oral and inhalation routes.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units

Performance Evidence	Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions	Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 12: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to minimise the risk of radiation to the patient, practitioner and others during the exposure of a prescribed dental radiographic image. It also describes the quality assurance measures that must be undertaken to ensure all radiographs are of consistent diagnostic standard.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Performance Evidence	Updated terminology
Knowledge Evidence	Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions	Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 13: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to interpret a prescribed request for a dental radiographic image. It also includes the preparation of the patient for dental radiography and the selection of equipment requirements.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>

Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Performance Evidence	Updated terminology
Knowledge Evidence	Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions	Minor rewording to align with standard Training Package assessment condition template language

Table 14: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to operate dental radiographic equipment and position the patient correctly to produce an intraoral or extraoral diagnostic radiographic image.</p> <p>Where work relates to extraoral radiography this includes orthopantomogram (OPG) and may include lateral cephalograms for orthodontic radiographic workups and excludes cone beam images.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Performance Evidence	Updated terminology
Knowledge Evidence	Updated terminology
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 15: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
---------	---

Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to dental assistants and other health care workers who are actively involved in promoting the general well-being of older patients through the promotion of healthy eating habits and good oral health. The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and performance criteria	Minor changes to wording to ensure clarity Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 16: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 17: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 18: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and performance criteria	Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 19: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Updated terminology Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 20: Proposed changes to *HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner. The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Updated terminology Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units

Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements
------------------------------	---

Table 21: Proposed changes to *HLTDE030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to assist the dentist or dental specialist with patient care during medical emergencies in a dental setting.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and those carrying out dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of a dental practitioner.</p>
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Updated terminology</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 22: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP001 Identify, select and prepare instruments, equipment and materials*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Reworded to: This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to identify, select and prepare appropriate instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments for specific removable dental prosthetic procedures.</p>
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Updated terminology</p> <p>Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout</p> <p>Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 23: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP002 Gather data, conduct dental prosthetic examination and develop treatment plan*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Updated terminology</p> <p>Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout</p> <p>Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 24: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP003 Take impressions*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs._
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout</p> <p>Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 25: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP004 Establish and record jaw relationships and select artificial teeth*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
---------	---

Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs._
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 26: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP005 Evaluate a removable dental prosthesis at try-in stage*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs._
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 27: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP006 Insert and issue a completed removable dental prosthesis*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	No change Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs._
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 28: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP007 Perform maintenance treatment for clients with removable dental prostheses*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and performance criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 29: Proposed changes to *HLTDEP008 Construct and insert an implant retained overdenture*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Element 1 title change to reflect performance criteria PCs changed throughout elements to ensure it aligns with TPOF and covers all key elements of the unit
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 30: Proposed changes to *HLTDET001 Construct models*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 31: Proposed changes to *HLTDET002 Construct custom impression trays*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 32: Proposed changes to *HLTDET003 Construct registration rims*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units

Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements
------------------------------	---

Table 33: Proposed changes to *HLTDET004 Articulate models and transfer records*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 34: Proposed changes to *HLTDET005 Construct thermoformed bases and appliances*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 35: Proposed changes to *HLTDET006 Construct immediate dentures*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Amended to include “This unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs”.

Elements and Performance Criteria	Reworded to include current terminology and provide clarity
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 36: Proposed changes to *HLTDET007 Construct removable acrylic partial dentures*

Section	
Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation	
Application	Amended to “It applies to dental technicians and other workers in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy to complete complex tasks, manage workflow, and take responsibility for the accuracy and quality of their own work”.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Reworded to include current terminology and provide clarity
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 37: Proposed changes to *HLTDET008 Construct cast removable alloy partial denture framework*

Section	
Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation	
Application	Amended to: “This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to construct burnout patterns for cast metal frameworks and to invest, trim, treat, finish, and evaluate alloy structures in accordance with prescribed specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention procedures. It applies to dental technicians and other workers in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy to complete complex tasks, manage workflow, and take responsibility for the accuracy and quality of their own work”.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Reworded to include current terminology and provide clarity Reworded to include appropriate verbs
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 38: Proposed changes to *HLTDET009 Construct crown and bridge structures*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Amended to: “This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to construct crown and bridge structures, including inlays, veneers, and substructures, in accordance with prescribed design specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention procedures.</p> <p>It applies to dental technicians and other workers in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy to complete complex tasks, manage workflow, and take responsibility for the accuracy, fit, and quality of prosthetic outputs”.</p>
Elements and Performance Criteria	Reworded to include current terminology and provide clarity
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 39: Proposed changes to *HLTDET010 Join alloy structures*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<p>Amended to: “This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to join dental alloys using thermal processes, in accordance with prescribed specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention procedures.</p> <p>It applies to dental technicians and other workers in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy to safely and accurately join alloys, manage workflow, and take responsibility for the quality and integrity of the final dental structures”.</p>
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions, merged 2 PC’s</p> <p>Updated terminology</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 40: Proposed changes to *HLTDET011 Construct ceramic and fixed restorations*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Amended to: “It applies to dental technicians and other workers in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy to safely and

	accurately construct ceramic restorations, manage workflow, and take responsibility for the quality and integrity of the final dental structures”.
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout</p> <p>Combined 2 PC’s</p> <p>Added PC’s to element 3</p> <p>Added PC’s to element 4</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 41: Proposed changes to *HLTDET012 Construct orthodontic appliances*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Amended to: This unit applies to the work dental technicians and other workers in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy to safely and accurately construct orthodontic appliances, manage workflow and take responsibility for the quality and integrity of the final dental structures.
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Updated terminology</p>
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 42: Proposed changes to *HLTDET013 Construct oral splints*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Amended to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	<p>Changed to observable and measurable actions</p> <p>Updated terminology</p>

Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 43: Proposed changes to *HLTDET014 Repair and modify dentures and appliances*

Section	
Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation	
Application	Amended to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 44: Proposed changes to *HLTDET015 Construct complete removable acrylic dentures and appliances*

Section	
Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation	
Application	Amended to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 45: Proposed changes to *HLTDET016 Design digital dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided design (CAD)*

Section	
Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation	

Application	Amended to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Updated terminology
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 46: Proposed changes to *HLTDET017 Construct dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Amended to: The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Changed to observable and measurable actions Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout

Table 47: Proposed changes to *HLTINF002 Process reusable medical devices and equipment*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: This unit describes the skills and knowledge required to clean, sterilise and package reusable medical devices and equipment
Elements and Performance Criteria	Reworded to include current terminology and provide clarity
Performance Evidence	Reworded to include current terminology and provide clarity
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 48: Proposed changes to *HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<i>Reworded to:</i> This unit describes skills and knowledge required to identify variations and recognise oral health issues through a visual check, observation of patient behaviour and habits, signs and symptoms and physical condition of patients. This enables the candidate to respond appropriately to the clinical findings to initiate follow up oral health care.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Updated terminology Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

 Table 49: Proposed changes to *HLTOHC008 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	<i>Reworded to:</i> This unit describes skills and knowledge required to identify variations and recognise oral health issues through a visual check, observation of patient behaviour and habits, signs and symptoms and physical condition of patients. This enables the candidate to respond appropriately to the clinical findings to initiate follow up oral health care.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Terminology updated Scope clarity and compliance embedded throughout
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

 Table 50: Proposed changes to *HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
---------	---

Application	Reworded to: The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Terminology updated
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 51: Proposed changes to *HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Reworded to: The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Elements and Performance Criteria	Terminology updated
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

4.3 Skill Sets

Table 52: Proposed changes to *HLTSS00072 Dental Radiography Skill Set*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Update to terminology
Elements and Performance Criteria	No change
Foundation Skills Outcomes	New field. Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. These will be amended following finalisation of units
Assessment Conditions	Assessor requirements updated to include RTO requirements

Table 53: New Skill set proposed *HLTSS00073 Oral Health Care Skill Set*

Section	Draft 1. Public and Government Consultation
Application	Update to terminology
Elements and Performance Criteria	No change

5. Next Steps

Public and Government Consultation is expected to take place from 12 March 2026 – 7 May 2026.

During the consultation period, the project team will facilitate multiple ways for stakeholders to engage and provide feedback, including the following:

- 1 virtual information session
- 8 face-to-face workshops, across major capital cities
- Site visits in regional areas
- 3 virtual workshops
- Consultation survey enabling stakeholders to provide feedback via HumanAbility’s website
- Opportunity to provide written feedback via email direct to the project team.

We invite stakeholders including employers, service providers, regulatory bodies, First Nations communities, training organisations, students and communities, to engage in the format that best suits them.

Throughout the consultation, a consultation log of feedback will be maintained and made public, along with rationales for any decisions or revisions. After consultation closes, the project team, with input from the Technical Committee, will review all feedback and update the drafts accordingly. Divergent views will be addressed, and if necessary, further validation will occur. Final drafts will then be submitted to the Assurance Body and the Skills Ministers for consideration, endorsement and implementation.

HumanAbility

ABN 36 665 836 608

Suite 4, 109 Union Road, Surrey Hills VIC 3127 | 1800 486 262

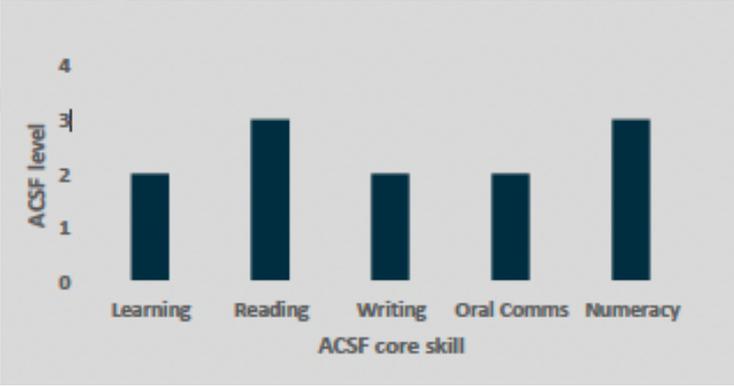
humanability.com.au



HumanAbility is a Jobs and Skills Council funded by the Australian Government Department of Employment and Workplace Relations.

HLT30521X Certificate III in Dental Assisting

<p>Qualification code</p>	<p><i>HLT30521X</i></p>
<p>Qualification title</p>	<p><i>Certificate III in Dental Assisting</i></p>
<p>Modification history</p>	<p><i>Release 6.</i></p> <p><i>Release 5. Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35021 Certificate III in Dental Assisting release 4. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.</i></p> <p><i>Release 4. Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35021 Certificate III in Dental Assisting release 3. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.</i></p> <p><i>Release 3. Minor change. Addition of two electives. Equivalent outcome.</i></p> <p><i>Release 2. Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.</i></p> <p><i>Release 1. HLT35021 Certificate III in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT35015 Certificate III in Dental Assisting.</i></p>
<p>Qualification description</p>	<p>This qualification reflects the role of workers who assist dental practitioners during oral health care procedures. The role includes maintaining high standards of infection control, assisting with practice administration and supporting quality and professionalism in the dental sector.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State or Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice.</p> <p>To achieve this qualification, the candidate must have completed at least 350 hours of work as detailed in the Assessment Requirements of the Units of Competency.</p> <p>No occupational licencing, certification or specific legislative requirements apply to this qualification at the time of publication.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance</p>

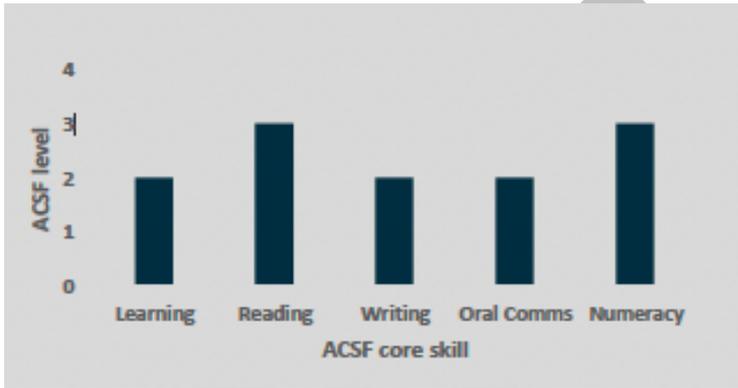
	with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian/New Zealand standards and industry codes of practice.												
Legislative/Licensing /Regulatory	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this qualification at the time of publication.</i>												
Foundation skills outcomes	<p><i>Indicates the foundation skill outcomes a competent learner is expected to have upon completion of the qualification. Separate assessment of foundation skills is not required. It should be reflected as a bar chart and include each of the five Australian Core Skills Framework skills (learning, reading, writing, oral communication, numeracy).</i></p> <p><i>Digital literacy outcomes are optional and can be specified as a descriptive statement below the foundation skills outcomes.</i></p> <p><i>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</i></p> <p>The foundation skill outcomes implicit in this qualification are outlined in the bar chart below.</p>  <table border="1"> <caption>ACSF core skill levels</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>ACSF core skill</th> <th>ACSF level</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Learning</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reading</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral Comms</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><i>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</i></p>	ACSF core skill	ACSF level	Learning	2	Reading	3	Writing	2	Oral Comms	2	Numeracy	3
ACSF core skill	ACSF level												
Learning	2												
Reading	3												
Writing	2												
Oral Comms	2												
Numeracy	3												

Entry requirements																											
Qualification mapping information	<i>No equivalent qualification.</i>																										
Packaging rules	<p>10 units must be completed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8 core units • 2 elective units, consisting of : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ at least X units from the electives listed below <p>The selection of electives must be relevant to the job outcome sought, local industry requirements and the complexity of skills appropriate to the AQF level of this qualification.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Core units</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CHCCOM005</td> <td>Communicate and work in health or community services</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CHCDIV001</td> <td>Work with diverse people</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HLTDEN015</td> <td>Prepare for and assist with dental procedures</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HLTDEN016</td> <td>Assist with dental radiography</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HLTDEN017</td> <td>Assist with administration in dental practice</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HLTINF002</td> <td>Process reusable medical devices and equipment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HLTINF006</td> <td>Apply basic principles and practices of infection prevention and control</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HLTWHS001</td> <td>Participate in workplace health and safety</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Elective units</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BSBTEC201</td> <td>Use business software applications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BSBTWK201</td> <td>Work effectively with others</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Core units		CHCCOM005	Communicate and work in health or community services	CHCDIV001	Work with diverse people	HLTDEN015	Prepare for and assist with dental procedures	HLTDEN016	Assist with dental radiography	HLTDEN017	Assist with administration in dental practice	HLTINF002	Process reusable medical devices and equipment	HLTINF006	Apply basic principles and practices of infection prevention and control	HLTWHS001	Participate in workplace health and safety	Elective units				BSBTEC201	Use business software applications	BSBTWK201	Work effectively with others
Core units																											
CHCCOM005	Communicate and work in health or community services																										
CHCDIV001	Work with diverse people																										
HLTDEN015	Prepare for and assist with dental procedures																										
HLTDEN016	Assist with dental radiography																										
HLTDEN017	Assist with administration in dental practice																										
HLTINF002	Process reusable medical devices and equipment																										
HLTINF006	Apply basic principles and practices of infection prevention and control																										
HLTWHS001	Participate in workplace health and safety																										
Elective units																											
BSBTEC201	Use business software applications																										
BSBTWK201	Work effectively with others																										

	CHCLEG001	Work legally and ethically
	HLTAID011	Provide First Aid
	HLTCCD003	Use medical terminology in health care
	HLTDEN027	Take a clinical photograph
	HLTDEN028	Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan
	HLTDEN030	Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting
	HLTDET001	Construct models
	HLTDET005	Construct thermoformed bases and appliances
	HLTOUT006	Transport emergency patients
	<p>* Units listed with an asterisk have a prerequisite unit of competency</p> <p><i>Units listed in italics include a mandatory workplace requirement</i></p>	
Links	<p><i>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</i></p>	

HLT450XX Certificate IV in Dental Assisting

Qualification code	HLT450XX													
Qualification title	Certificate IV in Dental Assisting													
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><i>Release</i></th> <th><i>Comment</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5</td> <td><i>Release 5 Minor changes to application</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Release 4. Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting release 3. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the general elective bank.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Minor corrections to mapping details. Equivalent outcomes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT45015 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	5	<i>Release 5 Minor changes to application</i>	4	Release 4. Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting release 3. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the general elective bank.	3	Minor corrections to mapping details. Equivalent outcomes.	2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.	1	HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT45015 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting.
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>													
5	<i>Release 5 Minor changes to application</i>													
4	Release 4. Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting release 3. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the general elective bank.													
3	Minor corrections to mapping details. Equivalent outcomes.													
2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.													
1	HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT45015 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting.													
Qualification description	<p>This qualification reflects the role of workers who provide an advanced level of assistance to dental practitioners which contributes to the quality of oral health care.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State or Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice.</p> <p>Dental radiography work must only be performed by a person with a radiation user licence granted by the relevant State /Territory regulatory authority under legislation.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance</p>													

	with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.												
Legislative/Licensing /Regulatory	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this qualification at the time of publication.												
Foundation skills outcomes	<p>The foundation skill outcomes implicit in this qualification are outlined in the bar chart below.</p>  <table border="1"> <caption>ACSF Core Skill Levels</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>ACSF core skill</th> <th>ACSF level</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Learning</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reading</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral Comms</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><i>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</i></p>	ACSF core skill	ACSF level	Learning	2	Reading	3	Writing	2	Oral Comms	2	Numeracy	3
ACSF core skill	ACSF level												
Learning	2												
Reading	3												
Writing	2												
Oral Comms	2												
Numeracy	3												
Entry requirements	<p>Entry to this qualification is open to individuals who have achieved:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HLT31812 Certificate III in Dental Assisting or • HLT35015 Certificate III in Dental Assisting or • HLT35021 Certificate III in Dental Assisting or equivalent. 												
Qualification mapping information	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Release</th> <th>Comments</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Minor corrections to mapping details. Equivalent outcomes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT45015 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Release	Comments	3	Minor corrections to mapping details. Equivalent outcomes.	2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.	1	HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT45015 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting.				
Release	Comments												
3	Minor corrections to mapping details. Equivalent outcomes.												
2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.												
1	HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting supersedes and is not equivalent to HLT45015 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting.												

Packaging rules*Mandatory field*

8 units must be completed:

- 2 core units
- 6 elective units, consisting of:
 - at least 4 units from the electives listed below
 - up to 2 units from the electives listed below or from any other current endorsed training package or accredited course

The selection of electives must be relevant to the job outcome sought, local industry requirements and the complexity of skills appropriate to the AQF level of this qualification.

Any combination of electives that meets the rules above can be selected for the award of the *Certificate IV in Dental Assisting*. Electives may be packaged to provide a Qualification with a specialisation, as outlined below.

Packaging for specialisation:

All Group A electives must be selected for award of the *Certificate IV in Dental Assisting (Dental Radiography)*.

Core units

HLTSTE003	Sterilise loads
-----------	-----------------

HLTWHS003	Maintain work health and safety
-----------	---------------------------------

Elective units

Group A: Dental Radiography specialisation

HLTDEN021	Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice
-----------	---

HLTDEN022	Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image
-----------	--

HLTDEN023	Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image
-----------	--

Other electives

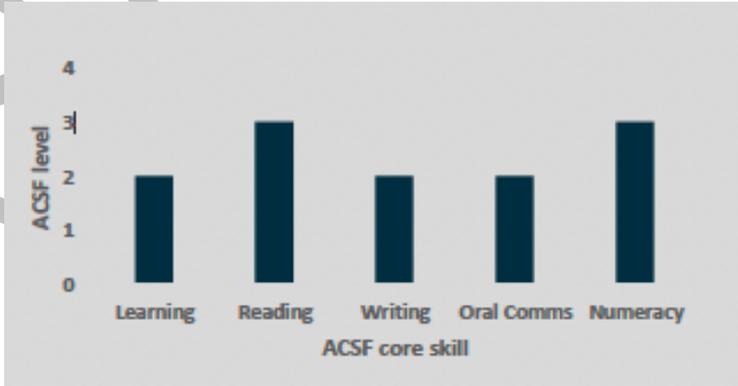
BSBOPS401	Coordinate business resources
-----------	-------------------------------

	BSBMED301	Interpret and apply medical terminology appropriately
	BSBMED401	Manage patient recordkeeping system
	CHCCCS014	Provide brief interventions
	CHCDIV002	Promote Aboriginal and/or Torres Strait Islander cultural safety
	CHCEDU001	Provide community focused health promotion and prevention strategies
	HLTCCD003	Use medical terminology in health care
	<i>HLTDEN015</i>	<i>Prepare for and assist with dental procedures*</i>
	<i>HLTDEN018</i>	<i>Implement an individualised oral hygiene program</i>
	<i>HLTDEN019 *</i>	<i>Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia</i>
	HLTDEN020	Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation
	HLTDEN024	Implement an oral hygiene program for older people
	HLTDEN025	Implement an oral health promotion program
	HLTDEN026	Take an impression for study models
	HLTDEN027	Take a clinical photograph
	<i>HLTDEN029</i>	<i>Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia</i>
	HLTDET001	Construct models
	HLTDET002	Construct custom impression trays
	HLTDET003	Construct registration rims
	HLTDET005	Construct thermoformed bases and appliances
	HLTOHC007	Recognise and respond to oral health issues

	HLTOHC008	Inform and support patients and groups about oral health
	HLTOHC009	Apply and use basic oral health products
	HLTOHC011	Apply fluoride varnish
	HLTSTE004	Manage sterile stock
	SIRXMGT001	Supervise and support frontline team members
	TLIP5037	Develop workplace policy and procedures
	<p>* Units listed with an asterisk have a prerequisite unit of competency</p> <p><i>Units listed in italics include a mandatory workplace requirement</i></p>	
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -	

HLT351XX Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting

Qualification code	HLT351XX															
Qualification title	Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting															
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Release</th><th>Comments</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>6</td><td>Description updated</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 4. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the elective bank.</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 3. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 2. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 1. Minor change to update First Aid units of competency.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Supersedes HLT32712 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting. Change in packaging rules.</td></tr></tbody></table>		Release	Comments	6	Description updated	5	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 4. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the elective bank.	4	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 3. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.	3	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 2. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.	2	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 1. Minor change to update First Aid units of competency.	1	This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Supersedes HLT32712 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting. Change in packaging rules.
Release	Comments															
6	Description updated															
5	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 4. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the elective bank.															
4	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 3. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.															
3	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 2. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.															
2	Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT35115 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting release 1. Minor change to update First Aid units of competency.															
1	This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Supersedes HLT32712 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting. Change in packaging rules.															

Qualification description	<p>This qualification reflects the role of dental laboratory assistants, who provide foundational support in the construction of dental appliances and prostheses.</p> <p>They develop the knowledge and practical skills to pour impressions, produce custom trays, manufacture occlusal registration rims, transfer oral records, articulate models, and construct mouthguards.</p> <p>They are equipped to contribute effectively to laboratory workflows, ensuring the accurate and safe preparation of dental devices according to professional standards and organisational procedures.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>												
Legislative/Licensing /Regulatory	<p>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this qualification at the time of publication.</p>												
Foundation skills outcomes	<p>The foundation skill outcomes implicit in this qualification are outlined in the bar chart below.</p>  <table border="1"> <caption>ACSF core skill levels</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>ACSF core skill</th> <th>ACSF level</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Learning</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reading</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral Comms</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</p>	ACSF core skill	ACSF level	Learning	2	Reading	3	Writing	2	Oral Comms	2	Numeracy	3
ACSF core skill	ACSF level												
Learning	2												
Reading	3												
Writing	2												
Oral Comms	2												
Numeracy	3												
Entry requirements	<p>Nil</p>												
Qualification mapping information	<p>Supersedes HLT32712 Certificate III in Dental Laboratory Assisting.</p>												

Packaging rules

11 units must be completed:

- 10 core units
- 1 elective units, consisting of:
 - at least 1 unit from the electives listed below or
 - 1 unit from any other current endorsed training package or accredited course

The selection of electives must be relevant to the job outcome sought, local industry requirements and the complexity of skills appropriate to the AQF level of this qualification.

Core units

CHCCOM005	Communicate and work in health or community services
CHCDIV001	Work with diverse people
HLTAID011	Provide first aid
HLTDET001	Construct models
HLTDET002	Construct custom impression trays
HLTDET003	Construct registration rims
HLTDET004	Articulate models and transfer records
HLTDET005	Construct thermoformed bases and appliances
HLTINF006	Apply basic principles and practices of infection prevention and control
HLTWHS003	Maintain work health and safety

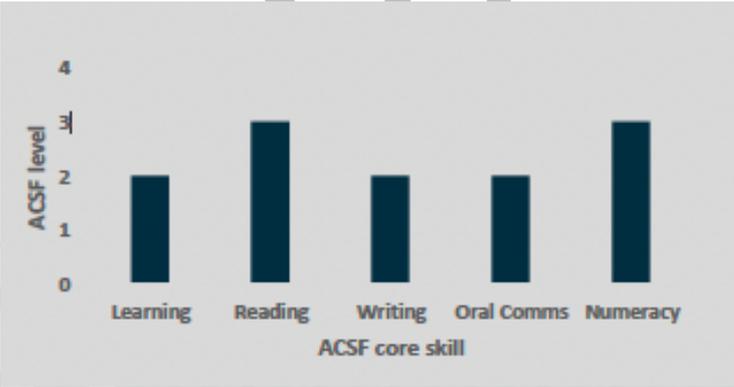
Elective units

CHCDIV002	Promote Aboriginal and/or Torres Strait islander cultural safety
HLTINF002	Process reusable medical devices and equipment
BSBOPS401	Coordinate business resources

	BSBINS302	Organise workplace information
	BSBTEC201	Use business software applications
	BSBPEF301	Organise personal work priorities
	BSBOPS301	Maintain business resources
	FSKDIG003	Use digital technology for non-routine workplace tasks
	<p>* Units listed with an asterisk have a prerequisite unit of competency</p> <p><i>Units listed in italics include a mandatory workplace requirement</i></p>	
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>	

FIRST DRAFT

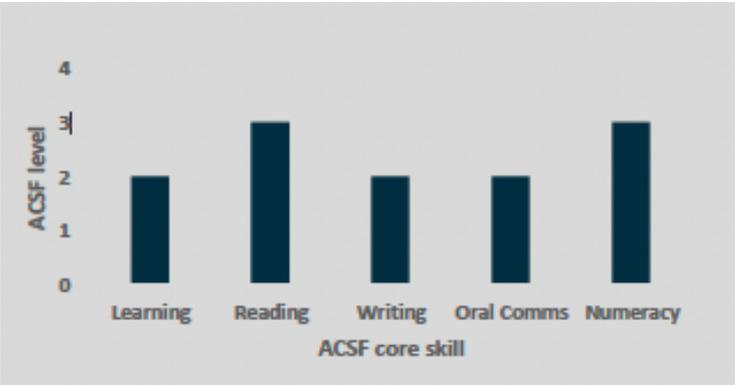
Qualification code	HLT551XX	
Qualification title	Diploma of Dental Technology	
Modification history	Release	Comment
	5	Supersedes and is equivalent to <i>HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology</i> release 4. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the elective bank.
	4	Supersedes and is equivalent to <i>HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology</i> release 3. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.
	3	Supersedes and is equivalent to <i>HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology</i> release 2. Minor change to update Infection Control unit of competency.
	2	Supersedes and is equivalent to <i>HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology</i> release 1. Minor change to update First Aid units of competency.
	1	Supersedes and is not equivalent <i>HLT55115 Diploma of Dental Technology</i> . Inclusion of additional core unit: <i>HLTDET016 Design digital dental restorations using computer-aided design</i> .
Qualification description	<p>This qualification reflects the role of a Dental Technician who constructs, modifies, and repairs dental appliances, including dentures, crowns, bridges, partial dentures, orthodontic appliances, and pre- and post-oral or maxillofacial surgical devices. Dental technicians work in dental laboratories, independently or as part of a team, under the direction of dentists, dental prosthetists, or dental specialists, applying</p>	

	<p>knowledge of dental materials, prosthetic techniques, anatomy, occlusion, and infection prevention. They use skills in fabrication, adjustment, evaluation, and repair of dental appliances, maintain laboratory equipment, and accurately document and manage work records, while adhering to quality, occupational safety, and workplace standards.</p> <p>The skills in this qualification must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>												
<p>Legislative/Licensing /Regulatory</p>	<p>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this qualification at the time of publication.</p>												
<p>Foundation skills outcomes <i>Mandatory field</i></p>	<p>The foundation skill outcomes implicit in this qualification are outlined in the bar chart below.</p>  <table border="1"> <caption>ACSF core skill levels</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>ACSF core skill</th> <th>ACSF level</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Learning</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reading</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral Comms</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><i>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</i></p>	ACSF core skill	ACSF level	Learning	2	Reading	3	Writing	2	Oral Comms	2	Numeracy	3
ACSF core skill	ACSF level												
Learning	2												
Reading	3												
Writing	2												
Oral Comms	2												
Numeracy	3												
<p>Packaging rules</p>	<p>25 units must be completed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 21 core units • 4 elective units, consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ at least 3 units from the electives listed below ○ up to 1 unit from the electives listed below or from any other current endorsed training package or accredited course <p>The selection of electives must be relevant to the job outcome sought, local industry requirements and the complexity of skills appropriate to the AQF level of this qualification.</p>												

Core units	
CHCCOM005	Communicate and work in health or community services
CHCCOM005	Communicate and work in health or community services
CHCDIV001	Work with diverse people
HLTAID011	Provide first aid
HLTDET001	Construct models
HLTDET002	Construct custom impression trays
HLTDET003	Construct registration rims
HLTDET004	Articulate models and transfer records
HLTDET005	Construct thermoformed bases and appliances
HLTDET006	Construct immediate dentures
HLTDET007	Construct removable acrylic partial dentures
HLTDET008	Construct cast removable alloy partial denture framework
HLTDET009	Construct crown and bridge structures
HLTDET010	Join alloy structures
HLTDET011	Construct ceramic and fixed restorations
HLTDET012	Construct orthodontic appliances
HLTDET013	Construct oral splints
HLTDET014	Repair and modify dentures and appliances
HLTDET015	Construct complete removable acrylic dentures and appliances
HLTDET016	Design digital dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided design (CAD)
HLTINF006	Apply basic principles and practices of infection prevention and control
HLTWHS003	Maintain work health and safety

Elective units	
CHCCOM002	Use communication to build relationships
CHCDIV002	Promote Aboriginal and/or Torres Strait Islander cultural safety
CHCPRP005	Engage with health professionals and the health system
HLTDET017	Construct dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)
HLTINF002	Process reusable devices and equipment
BSBINF401	Report on financial activity
BSBINF410	Implement records systems for small business
BSBLDR414	Lead team effectiveness
BSBOPS301	Maintain business resources
BSBOPS304	Deliver and monitor a service to customers
BSBOPS401	Coordinate business resources
BSBOPS402	Coordinate business operational plans
BSBOPS404	Implement customer service strategies
BSBPMG430	Undertake project work
BSBTEC201	Use business software applications
	<p>* Units listed with an asterisk have a prerequisite unit of competency</p> <p><i>Units listed in italics include a mandatory workplace requirement</i></p>
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p> <p>https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

Qualification code	<i>HLT65015</i>
Qualification title	<i>Advanced Diploma of Dental Prosthetics</i>
Modification history	<p><i>Release 4</i></p> <p>Release 3. Supersedes and is equivalent to HLT65015 Advanced Diploma of Dental Prosthetics release 2. Minor change to replace superseded units of competency in the general elective bank.</p> <p>Release 2 This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 4.1</i>.</p> <p><i>Updated Entry Requirements.</i></p> <p>Release 1 This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p><i>Supersedes HLT60412. Change to packaging rules. Minimum work requirement of 240 hours. Entry requirement.</i></p>
Qualification description	<p>This qualification reflects the role of a dental prosthetist who works as independent practitioners in the assessment, treatment, management of a person who requires provision of removable dentures; and who also provides unique flexible removable mouthguards used for sporting activities.</p> <p>To achieve this qualification, the candidate must have completed at least of 240 hours of dental prosthetist clinical practice work as detailed in the Assessment Requirements of the units of competency.</p>
Legislative/Licensing /Regulatory	<p>A graduate holding an Advanced Diploma of Dental Prosthetics approved by the Dental Board of Australia is able to apply for registration with the Dental Board of Australia. Further information on registration is available at www.dentalboard.gov.au</p>

<p>Foundation skills outcomes</p>	<p>The foundation skill outcomes implicit in this qualification are outlined in the bar chart below.</p>  <p>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</p>
<p>Entry requirements</p>	<p>To gain entry into HLT65015 Advanced Diploma of Dental Prosthetics a candidate must hold the HLT55115 Diploma of Dental Technology or the HLT55118 Diploma of Dental Technology.</p>
<p>Qualification mapping information</p>	<p><i>No equivalent qualification.</i></p>
<p>Packaging rules</p>	<p>12 units must be completed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 11 core units • 1 elective unit, consisting of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ up to 1 unit from the electives listed below or from any other current endorsed training package or accredited course <p>The selection of electives must be relevant to the job outcome sought, local industry requirements and the complexity of skills appropriate to the AQF level of this qualification.</p>
<p>Core units</p>	
<p>CHCPOL003</p>	<p>Research and apply evidence to practice</p>

	HLTDEN004	Implement an individualised oral hygiene program
	HLTDEP001	Identify, select and prepare instruments, equipment and materials*
	HLTDEP002	Gather data, conduct dental prosthetic examination and develop treatment plan*
	HLTDEP003	Take impressions*
	HLTDEP004	Establish and record jaw relationships and select artificial teeth*
	HLTDEP005	Evaluate a removable dental prosthesis at try-in stage*
	HLTDEP006	Insert and issue a completed removable dental prosthesis*
	HLTDEP007	Perform maintenance treatment for clients with removable dental prostheses*
	HLTDEP008	Construct and insert an implant retained overdenture*
	HLTINF002	Process reusable instruments and equipment
	Elective units	
	Group A:	
	HLTDEN025	Implement an oral health promotion program
	HLTDEN027	Take a clinical photograph
	BSBFIN501	Manage budgets and financial plans
	BSBHRM61	Contribute to strategic workforce planning
	BSBLDR523	Lead and manage effective workplace relationships
	BSBINS512	Monitor business records systems
	BSBTWK502	Manage team effectiveness

	<p>* Units listed with an asterisk have a prerequisite unit of competency</p> <p><i>Units listed in italics include a mandatory workplace requirement</i></p>
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p> <p>https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN015X Prepare for and assist with dental procedures

Unit code	HLTDEN015X	
Unit title	Prepare for and assist with dental procedures	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN001 Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures.
	Release 2	Release 2 HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	Release 3	Minor change. Updated knowledge evidence. Equivalent outcome.
	Release 4	Minor changes to application.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to prepare the dental surgery including equipment, instruments and materials, for dental procedures and assist the dental practitioner during dental procedures.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and those carrying out dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of a dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance current with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DEN	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare dental surgery for dental procedures.	1.1. Ensure patient records accessible in the surgery clean zone. 1.2. Identify planned procedure 1.3. Select equipment, instruments, materials and medicaments for planned procedure and arrange in likely order of use 1.4. Explain and support patient and provide pre-procedural items to patient 1.5. Support aseptic techniques to prevent spread of infection
2. Use dental terminology.	2.1. Communicate with dental team using dental terminology 2.2. Receive, interpret and document written and oral instructions using dental terminology 2.3. Use and interpret common dental abbreviations and symbols
3. Record personal, medical and dental details.	3.1. Make accurate, legible and legal records of patient personal, medical and dental information as directed by dental practitioner 3.2. Verify records dental with practitioner according to organisational procedures 3.3. Maintain confidentiality of patient information
4. Select and prepare syringe local anaesthesia.	4.1. Select and prepare the syringe, cartridge and needle for local anaesthesia as directed by dental practitioner 4.2. Check expiry dates and anaesthetic cartridge prior to use
5. Assist practitioner during dental procedures.	5.1. Select equipment, instruments, materials and medicaments and transfer to the dental practitioner 5.2. Assist dental practitioner to maintain a clear field of vision 5.3. Clear mouth of fluids and debris, and control moisture 5.4. Retract and protect the patient's soft tissues using instruments and materials appropriate to the procedure 5.5. Monitor patient wellbeing and take timely action to support patient and dental practitioner 5.6. Prepare materials and medicaments using appropriate technique and timing to ensure consistency and quantity following manufacturer instructions 5.7. Retrieve additional items, instruments, materials and medicaments using appropriate methods to avoid contamination
6. Manage waste and decontaminate the clinical area during changeover of patients.	6.1. Wear personal protective equipment throughout the changeover procedure and replace as required to maintain safety and infection control. 6.2. Dispose of single use items in waste receptacle. 6.3. Place reusable items in transfer container.

	<p>6.4. Flush dental unit water lines and suction.</p> <p>6.5. Use disposable detergent wipes to clean and decontaminate surfaces using techniques to prevent cross contamination.</p> <p>6.6. Ensure changeover procedures are carried out using infection prevention and control practices according to current Australian Standards and guidelines</p>
7. Maintain and store instruments, equipment materials and medicaments.	<p>7.1. Maintain instruments and equipment in good working order and fit for purpose</p> <p>7.2. Ensure maintenance records are legible and accurate</p> <p>7.3. Store instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments according to manufacturer instructions and National and State or Territory guidelines</p> <p>7.4. Monitor stock rotation and expiry dates</p> <p>7.5. Ensure packaged sterile items are stored and labelled according to National and State or Territory guidelines</p>
8. Work legally, ethically and professionally in a dental setting.	<p>8.1. Identify sources of legal information relating to the dental industry</p> <p>8.2. Identify own legal responsibilities in context of the job role.</p> <p>8.3. Adhere to legal requirements in work practice according to organisational policies and procedures and work role</p> <p>8.4. Recognise situations where reporting is required</p> <p>8.5. Identify relevant professional bodies and their role</p> <p>8.6. Identify opportunities and sources of professional development</p> <p>8.7. Recognise potential ethical issues, dilemmas and discuss with appropriate person</p> <p>8.8. Recognise own personal values and attitudes and take into account to ensure non-judgemental practice</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	manage patient records
Writing skills to:	manage patient records; complete reports
Oral communication skills to:	work with patients and dental team
Numeracy skills to:	complete stock rotation; identify teeth
Learning skills to:	identify professional development opportunities

Range of conditions

N/A

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:

- perform the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 350 hours of dental assisting work that involves:
 - at least 300 hours in a real dental clinic workplace
 - up to 50 hours in a simulated dental clinic workplace environment.

The dental assisting work in the real dental clinic workplace must include each of the following:

- preparing for at least 3 individual patient dental procedures at the chair-side involving:
 - applying standard precautions
 - ensuring instruments used for invasive procedures are sterile at time of use
 - protecting materials, equipment and instruments from contamination until required for use
- providing chair-side support to the dental practitioner on at least 3 separate procedures involving
 - general dentistry treatment and specialised dentistry treatment
 - selecting and preparing instruments, equipment and materials as directed by the practitioner
 - dispensing and preparing materials and medicaments according to manufacturer instructions and practitioner request
- storing materials and medicaments in accordance with manufacturer instructions and practitioner requirements in the workplace during the above activities.

Knowledge Evidence

Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:

- dental practice and organisational procedures
- current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards
- Australian Dental Association guidelines applicable to preparing for and assisting with dental procedures:
 - infection prevention and control
 - record keeping
- Australian Schedule of Dental Services and Glossary information relevant to dental assistants
- dental and medical records and charts:
 - confidentiality of patient records
 - items that constitute a dental record
 - dental terminology used in dental charting and computer software charting programs
 - purpose and requirements for maintaining accurate records of examination, treatments, materials used, and drugs and medicaments prescribed
 - purpose of study casts and materials used in their construction
 - reasons for taking radiographs and photographs
- fundamental general anatomy and physiology:
 - body systems
 - common systemic diseases and their relationship to oral health
- fundamental oral anatomy and physiology:
 - deciduous and permanent dentition and dates of eruption
 - structure and functions of teeth and periodontal tissues
 - structures of oral cavity including salivary glands and saliva
 - tooth identification
- fundamental oral pathology:

- pathology of dental caries and periodontal disease
- main causes of dental caries and periodontal disease
- role of bacteria, diet and dental plaque
- fields of dentistry required to assist the practitioner to carry out procedures for the full range of general dental procedures
- normal growth and development of deciduous and permanent dentition including the promotion and maintenance of oral health requirements
- effects of ageing on oral tissues and special needs of elderly dental patients
- types, properties and storage of dental materials
- difference between detergent and disinfectant and their application including dilution rate and surface contact time as referenced in:
 - AS/NZS 4815:2006 Office-based health care facilities - Reprocessing of reusable medical and surgical instruments and equipment, and maintenance of the associated environment
 - AS5369:2023 Reprocessing of reusable medical devices in health service organisations
- fundamental dental pharmacology and anaesthesia:
 - local anaesthetic techniques
 - local anaesthetic equipment and drugs
 - complications which may arise from administration of local anaesthesia
- specialised dentistry:
 - endodontics
 - oral surgery
 - orthodontics
 - periodontics
 - and basic instruments used
- methods of retracting and protecting soft tissue
- methods for providing a clear field of vision
- methods for controlling moisture

- reasons why patients need to follow pre- and post-operative instructions
- contributing factors and responses to medical and dental emergencies
- aseptic techniques used in dental procedures
- precautions of maintaining clean surfaces and managing blood and body fluid spills
- dental instruments:
 - endodontic
 - surgical and restorative including handpieces and burs
 - dental unit including suctioning unit, water line, air turbine motors and practitioner light
- dental materials including medicaments and impression and restorative materials
- components of basic tray setups and use of instruments:
 - examination
 - scaling and prophylaxis
 - restoration
 - extraction
 - basic extraction forceps and elevators
 - luxator
 - needle holders
 - scalpel
 - suture
- organisational procedures for reporting faults in equipment
- sources of State or Territory legal information relevant to the role of the dental assistant including regulation applicable to:
 - the practice of dentistry
 - privacy
 - Work Health and Safety Act
 - child protection
 - Fair Work Act & Regulation
- relevant codes and guidelines including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Dental Assistants Code of Ethics ○ mandatory notifications about registered health practitioners • situations where a report is required and reporting processes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ known or suspected child abuse or neglect ○ professional negligence ○ breach of privacy ○ assault ○ conflict of interest ○ corruption • Government and professional body roles: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Australian Dental Association (ADA) ○ Dental Assistants Professional Association (DAPA) ○ National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) ○ Sterilising Research and Advisory Council of Australia (SRACA) ○ Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care (ACSQHC) ○ Australian Health Care Complaints Commission (AHCCC) ○ Dental Board of Australia (DBA) ○ Fair Work Ombudsman and Registered Organisations Commission.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental clinic workplace or in a simulated environment as specified in the performance evidence.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ steam steriliser ○ barrier protection materials ○ cleaning equipment ○ curing light ○ dental chair

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dental unit including, suctioning unit, water line, air turbine motors and practitioner light ○ practitioner and assistant protective equipment ○ radiographs ○ waste disposal equipment ○ dental materials including medicaments and impression and restorative materials ○ dental instruments including endodontic, surgical and restorative handpieces and burs ○ current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ Australia Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines ○ organisational infection control guidelines and procedures • access to pre-procedural items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dental bib ○ protective eyewear ○ mouth rinse ○ cup ○ hair covering ○ surgical drape ○ rubber dam • modelling of industry operating conditions, including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors and hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p>HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN001 Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures.</p>

HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography

Unit code	HLTDEN016	
Unit title	Assist with dental radiography	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN002 Assist with dental radiography.
	Release 2	Release 2 HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	Release 3	
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to prepare patients for dental radiography. It also describes the skills and knowledge to process and mount conventional dental radiographs.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Dental Assisting	
Unit sector	Dental	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	
1. Prepare for dental radiography.	1.1. Ensure work surfaces are clean and dry.	

	<p>1.2. Select and prepare the correct radiographic image receptors, relevant holders and patient record for the radiographic examination and make it available to the dental practitioner.</p> <p>1.3. Assist the practitioner in the implementation of safe work practices to minimise radiation risks to workers and to patients during procedure.</p>												
2. Process and mount dental radiographs for viewing.	<p>2.1. Wear personal protective equipment.</p> <p>2.2. Handle image receptors carefully to maintain quality.</p> <p>2.3. Process image as directed by dental practitioner.</p> <p>2.4. Orientate or mount image in correct viewing perspective, identifying landmarks to confirm.</p> <p>2.5. Ensure image is labelled, dated and attached to the appropriate patient record for storage or filing.</p> <p>2.6. Check radiograph image meets diagnostic standards and notify operator of any defects.</p> <p>2.7. Identify improvements in processing or mounting images to ensure quality criteria is met.</p>												
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p><i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i></p>													
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Skills</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Reading skills to:</td> <td>check radiographs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing skills to:</td> <td>label radiographs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral communication skills to:</td> <td>communicate instructions.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy skills to:</td> <td>date radiographs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Learning skills to:</td> <td>assist patient.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Skills	Description	Reading skills to:	check radiographs.	Writing skills to:	label radiographs.	Oral communication skills to:	communicate instructions.	Numeracy skills to:	date radiographs.	Learning skills to:	assist patient.
Skills	Description												
Reading skills to:	check radiographs.												
Writing skills to:	label radiographs.												
Oral communication skills to:	communicate instructions.												
Numeracy skills to:	date radiographs.												
Learning skills to:	assist patient.												
<p>Range of conditions</p> <p>N/A</p>													

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> prepare for 3 dental radiographic imaging procedures.
-----------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • consistently apply safe work practices during above dental radiography work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ positioning self and assist with positioning other people in a safe location during radiographic exposures ○ correctly handling and storing of radiographic image receptors • correctly process, mount and file radiographic films or digital images on at least 3 occasions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ applying the correct processing procedure ○ handling image receptors carefully ○ attaching accurate, legible and complete records
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work and how these are applied in organisations and in individual practice including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ codes of practice and safety guides: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ radiation protection in dentistry ○ duty of care ○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent ○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure ○ radiation user licence ○ rights and responsibilities of workers, employers and patients ○ work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations ○ work health and safety • equipment and materials used for dental radiography and the correct procedures for use including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ equipment for automatic processing ○ equipment for manual processing

- equipment for digital radiography
- reasons for rotating film stock and using film before its expiry date
- reasons for storing films away from ionising radiation
- safe methods of storage and disposal of processing solutions
- the nature and purpose of processing solutions
- equipment required for a range of dental radiographic image exposures, including:
 - intraoral radiographs including bitewing, periapical and occlusal images
 - intraoral receptor sizes and use
 - extraoral radiographs including orthopantomogram (OPG)
- production and biological effects of ionising radiation:
 - biological risks associated with X-rays
 - hazards associated with X-rays including the mechanisms by which X-rays cause damage to human tissues
 - nature and uses of X-rays
 - production of X-rays
- equipment and processes required to process digital radiographic images, including:
 - digital receptor types
 - phosphor plate scanners
 - computing facilities and software
 - maintenance requirements
 - common handling errors
- equipment and processes required to process film based radiographic images, including:
 - chemical processing solutions
 - manual film processing
 - automatic film processing
 - quality requirements for film processing
 - common film processing errors and causes

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ requirements for handling, storing and disposing of chemicals and radiographic film • process for orientating radiographic images including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ fundamental knowledge of dental anatomy ○ methods of mounting radiographs • role of radiographs in dentistry including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ benefits and risks of dental radiography ○ use of radiographs in diagnosing and monitoring dental disease • code of practice for radiation protection in dentistry including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ methods for monitoring the adequacy of radiation protection ○ procedures for minimising radiation risks to patients, self, the oral healthcare team and the public ○ the organisation's quality assurance policy for processing radiographs to consistent diagnostic quality ○ the purpose of quality assuring dental radiographs and its relationship to radiation protection • Environment Protection Authority (EPA) compliance requirements for radiographic equipment.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental clinic workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ barrier protection equipment and materials ○ dental chair and unit ○ radiographic machine ○ practitioner and assistant protective equipment ○ radiographic image receptors ○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations' requirements for assessors and hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience.</p>
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN016 Assist with dental radiography supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN002 Assist with dental radiography.

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice

Unit code	HLTDEN017	
Unit title	Assist with administration in dental practice	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN003 Assist with administration in dental practice.
	Release 2	Release 2 HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	Release 3	
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required for a dental assistant to assist the practitioner by managing appointments to suit the patient and the organisation, recording and reconciling payments, and maintaining patient records.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants who assist with administration in dental practice.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Dental Assisting	
Unit sector	Dental	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	

<p>1. Communicate appropriately in a dental administrative setting.</p>	<p>1.1. Present in attire consistent with infection prevention and control guidelines and practice policy for professional presentation.</p> <p>1.2. Greet patients, carers and other visitors according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>1.3. Listen respectfully to enquiries or concerns.</p> <p>1.4. Respond to enquiries accurately and ethically within scope of responsibility using language which is easily understood.</p> <p>1.5. Refer enquiries outside of area of responsibility or knowledge to appropriate person.</p> <p>1.6. Operate electronic communication equipment to communicate with patients, carers and others according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>1.7. Prioritise messages and record them legibly and accurately.</p> <p>1.8. Maintain confidentiality of information relating to patients, staff and the organisation.</p>
<p>2. Allocate appointments appropriate to patient and organisation requirements.</p>	<p>2.1. Identify patients who should be given priority and advance the level of priority for patients who require immediate attention in a dental emergency.</p> <p>2.2. Identify patient's appointment requirements.</p> <p>2.3. Seek agreement on an appointment time that meets patient preferences according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.4. Assist with managing patient expectations regarding waiting times for emergency care.</p> <p>2.5. Use the patient information system to record appointment details accurately and legibly using standard dental notation according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.6. Provide a copy of appointment details to the patient.</p> <p>2.7. Monitor appointment schedules and notify patients and the oral health care team of any necessary changes within required timeframe.</p>
<p>3. Process and reconcile patient accounts.</p>	<p>3.1. Cross check item code for services received.</p> <p>3.2. Process payments including any applicable discounts or rebates.</p> <p>3.3. Check and accurately record payments received.</p> <p>3.4. Provide the patient with itemised account and receipt.</p> <p>3.5. Reconcile daily payment totals according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>3.6. Follow security procedures for handling of cash.</p>
<p>4. Maintain patient records.</p>	<p>4.1. Ensure security of passwords and electronic data.</p> <p>4.2. Access and prepare patient records and make notation of fees and diagnostic records.</p> <p>4.3. Enter patient information accurately according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>4.4. Maintain the integrity and confidentiality of patient records.</p>

	4.5. Maintain up-to-date, accurate and complete records of laboratory work.
5. Assist with patient recalls.	5.1. Access a patient recall system. 5.2. Identify patients due for recall and notify them that an appointment is due. 5.3. Follow-up patients who do not respond to a recall appointment request.

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	recall patients.
Writing skills to:	communicate instructions.
Oral communication skills to:	communicate instructions.
Numeracy skills to:	record laboratory work.
Learning skills to:	assist patient.

Range of conditions

N/A

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • assist with management of an appointment and recall system on one occasion including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ recording patient details and records ○ recording appointments ○ assessing the urgency of calls and prioritising appointments ○ responding to requests for information • record financial transactions for at least three different patients in accordance with dental practice or organisation requirements including:
-----------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ processing payments including applicable discounts or rebates ○ using processes for handling and recording financial transactions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ at least one Government Benefits Scheme ▪ Health Industry Claims (HICAPS) ▪ issuing invoice ▪ itemising patient services using Australian Schedule of Dental Services and Glossary of item numbers ▪ recording payments and issuing receipts ▪ processing different methods of payment including cash and credit or debit card ▪ transferring electronic records, adhering to privacy confidentiality and security policies and procedures • interact effectively with at least three different patients including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ asking for clarification from patient ○ modifying behaviour ensuring the patient needs are met ○ appropriate verbal language and non-verbal body language.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations, for dental assisting work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ codes of practice ○ discrimination ○ duty of care ○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent ○ current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure for the recording, transfer and storage of patient records ○ records management and health privacy principles and their application to the collection of information by the

	<p>dental practice or organisation including the patient's right to access</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">○ management of dental images and patient access or transfer○ work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations○ work health and safety• procedures for taking and recording appointments, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ confirming appointments○ action that must be taken for broken or cancelled appointments○ practitioner's preferred work routine○ particular needs that patients may have for the timing of appointments○ relevant details that must be entered into the patient information system, and the written confirmation that must be provided to the patient○ time constraints imposed by the dental laboratory○ time requirements of different treatment procedures, and the effect this has on appointment scheduling○ ways in which scheduling of appointments may cause problems for the practice, and possible methods for remedying this• methods used by the dental practice or organisation to identify those patients who require either recall examination or follow-up treatment• methods used for follow-up of patients who do not respond to recall• fundamental dental terminology including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ abbreviations and symbols used when recording dental treatment○ appropriate periodontal indices○ notation systems in accordance with codes and guidelines used in the Federation Dentaire Internationale (FDI) and charting symbols for tooth surfaces, cavities and other dental problems.
--	---

- processes for handling and recording financial transactions, including:
 - accurate numerical calculation of costs
 - Health Industry Claims and Payments Service (HICAPS) electronic claims
 - issuing invoices
 - itemising patient accounts, using the coding system described in the Australian Schedule of Dental Services and Glossary
 - operating a petty cash system
 - organisation policy and procedures for banking and secure handling of cash
 - recording payments and issuing of receipts
 - total daily payment reconciliation according to organisational policies and procedures
 - Department of Veteran's Affairs (DVA) health care program
 - the different methods of payment, and the details that need to be recorded and checked for credit card and debit card
 - transfer of electronic records including privacy, confidentiality and security
- conditions that require urgent dental or medical treatment
- dental complications relevant to the dental triage role including:
 - dental and or maxillofacial trauma including avulsed teeth
 - serious dental infections requiring urgent attention
 - significant dental haemorrhage
 - systemic progression of dental problems including compromised airway
- medical problems that may complicate dental management including:
 - patients requiring antibiotic cover
 - patients requiring steroid cover
 - patients who are pregnant

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ patients with significant learning or physical disabilities that may affect their ability to wait for treatment ● the special requirements of children with toothache.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental clinic workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ telephone ○ patient information system and patient records ○ equipment for handling and recording financial transactions ○ current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ● modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations' requirements for assessors.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p>HLTDEN017 Assist with administration in dental practice supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN003 Assist with administration in dental practice.</p>

HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program

Unit code	HLTDEN018	
Unit title	Implement an individualised oral hygiene program	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN004 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program.
	Release 2	Release 2 HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	Release 3	
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to implement an individualised oral hygiene program and promote oral health.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and to other health care workers who are actively involved in promoting the general well-being of patients through promotion of healthy eating habits and good oral health.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures <i>or</i> HLTDA303D Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures <i>or</i> HLTDEN001 Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures <i>or</i> HLTDA303D Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures	
Competency field	Dental Assisting	
Unit sector	Dental	

Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Implement a prescribed oral health education program.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.1. Follow a prescribed oral health education program. 1.2. Review patient's current oral hygiene routines. 1.3. Provide detailed information on the causes and prevention of oral diseases to patient or carer using language that can be easily understood. 1.4. Provide an environment for patient or carer to ask questions and become involved in improving their oral health. 1.5. Actively encourage patient or carer to follow an effective individual oral health program. 1.6. Implement a review strategy to determine the effectiveness of the oral health education program.
2. Demonstrate oral hygiene techniques to patient or carer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2.1. Use a plaque index system to accurately record scores and interpret findings. 2.2. Demonstrate oral hygiene techniques specific to patient needs. 2.3. Provide information about the advantages of different oral hygiene techniques and involve patient or carer in the decision-making process. 2.4. Assist patient or carer in implementing relevant oral hygiene techniques. 2.5. Demonstrate how to use aids specific to patient needs to achieve and maintain effective oral hygiene. 2.6. Evaluate patient or carer oral hygiene techniques and provide further instruction when appropriate. 2.7. Provide information appropriately on the effectiveness and availability of fluoride as directed by the dental practitioner.
3. Provide appropriate advice on cariogenic food and drinks.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.1. Involve patient or carer in a review of current dietary habits. 3.2. Develop and give patient or carer appropriate information on acids and fermentable carbohydrates and confirm understanding. 3.3. Actively encourage patient or carer to ask questions or express views.
4. Perform a saliva diagnostic test and record the results.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4.1. Provide full details of procedure to patient or carer. 4.2. Provide specific instructions to patient or carer before the appointment where a saliva diagnostic test is planned. 4.3. Select and prepare appropriate materials for a saliva diagnostic test. 4.4. Perform a resting or unstimulated saliva test and record the result according to manufacturer's instructions.

	4.5. Perform a stimulated saliva test and record the result in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
5. Implement a prescribed prevention program to suit an individual patient.	<p>5.1. Provide information as directed by the dental practitioner, on lifestyle change to assist with diminished salivary flow.</p> <p>5.2. Provide information on materials that can provide additional external protection to the teeth.</p> <p>5.3. Explain methods to increase salivary stimulation as directed by the dental practitioner.</p> <p>5.4. Assist patient or carers to implement prescribed oral hygiene programs in response to saliva quality and composition.</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	provide information.
Writing skills to:	communicate instructions.
Oral communication skills to:	provide salivation stimulation information.
Numeracy skills to:	perform tests.
Learning skills to:	assist patient.

Range of conditions

N/A

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • provide comprehensive information to at least 5 different patients including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ information on the prevention of oral diseases ○ advice on and demonstration of proper oral hygiene techniques ○ emphasising benefits of good oral hygiene to inform and motivate behaviour change
-----------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • perform at least one unstimulated and one stimulated saliva test on a patient, record results and provide information to patient as directed by the dental practitioner.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ structures of the oral cavity, hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function ○ dentition including arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth • plaque and its differing roles in the development of dental caries and periodontal disease • saliva and its role in maintenance of oral health including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ protecting teeth by neutralising acid ○ acting as a lubricant ○ delivering calcium, phosphate and fluoride to the tooth surface • biochemical, pathological or pharmacological influences on diagnostic salivary testing and results • factors that lead to the development of dental caries including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ bacteria in dental plaque ○ diet ○ susceptible tooth surfaces ○ socioeconomic background including dietary intake ○ mental health conditions and awareness of oral health issues ○ eruption time of teeth • factors that prevent and control dental caries: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ increasing salivary flow and optimising its composition. ○ fluorides ○ plaque control and removal ○ dietary change

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ oral health education • factors that lead to the development of periodontal disease including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ bacteria in dental plaque ○ accumulation of plaque and calculus ○ smoking ○ medications ○ eruption time of teeth • factors that prevent and control periodontal disease including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ oral health education ○ plaque control • causes, and prevention, of non caries tooth wear: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ erosion ○ abrasion ○ attrition • role of properly constructed and fitted mouthguards in preventing dental injuries • fundamental knowledge of the impact of smoking on oral soft tissues • fundamental knowledge of systemic conditions which influence the development of oral disease • local oral factors which influence the development of oral disease • modifications to oral health education programs related to special needs due to disability, aged care and children’s needs • oral appliances and their impact on oral hygiene maintenance • legislative requirements related to the use of fluoride in dentistry.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental clinic workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ personal protective equipment ○ cleaning equipment ○ disposable and non-disposable instruments • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations' requirements for assessors and hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p>HLTDEN018 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN004 Implement an individualised oral hygiene program.</p>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia

Unit code	HLTDEN019	
Unit title	Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN005 Assist in oral health care procedures during general anaesthesia.
	Release 2	Release 2 HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	Release 3	
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to assist the practitioner in carrying out dental procedures on patients under general anaesthesia.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	HLTA303D Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures <i>or</i> HLTDEN001 Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures <i>or</i> HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures	
Competency field	Dental Assisting	
Unit sector	Dental	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare patient for dental procedures under general anaesthesia.	<p>1.1. Confirm and document arrangements for an escort for patient following the procedure</p> <p>1.2. Provide an opportunity and environment for patient or carer to ask questions</p> <p>1.3. Make accessible in the clean zone of the surgery the necessary patient records</p> <p>1.4. Maintain confidentiality of patient information according to organisational procedures</p> <p>1.5. Assist with confirmation of the correct patient, site, and procedure</p>
2. Prepare for dental procedures under general anaesthesia.	<p>2.1. Perform suitable hand hygiene and use aseptic technique in applying personal protective equipment in preparation for procedures under general anaesthesia</p> <p>2.2. Prepare the equipment, instruments, materials and medicaments for the planned procedure</p> <p>2.3. Ensure instruments for dental procedure are ready and usable at the suite or theatre</p> <p>2.4. Follow suite or theatre organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.5. Identify required instruments and equipment, transfer them safely using aseptic technique</p>
3. Assist with patient discharge after undergoing dental procedures under general anaesthesia.	<p>3.1. Assist in the provision of post-operative dental procedures according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.2. Ensure post-operative written instructions are communicated and provided by authorised person to patient, carer or escort</p> <p>3.3. Assist in the authorised discharge of patient to the carer or escort according to organisational procedures</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	confirm instructions.
Writing skills to:	communicate instructions.
Oral communication skills to:	provide discharge information.
Numeracy skills to:	follow aseptic techniques.
Learning skills to:	review aseptic techniques.

Range of conditions

N/A

Assessment Requirements

<p>Performance Evidence</p>	<p>Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• prepare equipment and assist the dental practitioner with dental procedures for 3 different patients under general anaesthesia, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ assisting the practitioner in aseptically handling and correctly positioning the equipment during the procedure○ following procedures to ensure patient safety during general anaesthesia○ correctly maintaining and storing instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments○ following organisational waste management and cleaning of equipment guidelines• support the dental team in the discharge care of at least one patient recovering from a dental procedure following general anaesthesia.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ codes of practice○ discrimination○ duty of care○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ records management○ work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations○ work health and safety• practitioners who are authorised to administer general anaesthesia to a patient, and the assessment process required before the dental procedure is carried out• levels of consciousness• equipment used to administer a general anaesthetic and equipment used in monitoring patient pre- and post-operatively• risks associated with general anaesthesia including risks of:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ chest infection○ cross-infection from instruments and handpieces○ deep venous thrombosis (DVT)○ anaphylaxis including from a reaction to anaesthetic○ lowered patient's body temperature, they may need extra blankets or warming devices to protect against hypothermia○ compromised patient comfort, ensure pressure points on skin are monitored○ aseptic handling of instruments○ dental instruments○ management of sterile packs• reasons for keeping accurate records of dental conditions and treatments• reasons why patients need to follow pre- and post-operative instructions, and the importance of this• medical emergencies and complications which may arise during and after general anaesthesia and appropriate medical responses and treatment to be given by the dental team• organisational procedures for:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ intake and discharge of patients○ confidentiality of patient information
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ suite or theatre used for dental procedures under anaesthesia ○ waste management and cleaning.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace.</p> <p>The requirement under performance evidence for the candidate to prepare equipment and assist the dental practitioner with dental procedures for 3 different patients under general anaesthesia must have been demonstrated using simulation prior to demonstration in the workplace and with members of the general public.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sterile dental equipment and instruments ○ surgical personal protective equipment for aseptic technique procedures ○ operating trolley ○ suctioning equipment ○ access to defibrillator ○ waste disposal equipment ○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessment must involve demonstration of tasks under the direction of the dental practitioner</p> <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations' requirements for assessors and hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p>HLTDEN019 Assist in dental procedures during general anaesthesia supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN005 Assist in oral health care procedures during general anaesthesia.</p>

HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation

Unit code	HLTDEN020	
Unit title	Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN006 Assist in oral health care procedures during conscious sedation.
	Release 2	Release 2 HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	Release 3	
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to assist the practitioner in carrying out dental procedures on patients under conscious sedation administered via intravenous, oral and inhalation routes.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Dental Assisting	
Unit sector	Dental	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	

1. Prepare the patient for dental procedures during conscious sedation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.1. Confirm and document arrangements for an escort for patient following the procedure 1.2. Provide an opportunity and environment for the patient or carer to ask questions 1.3. Make accessible in the clean zone of the surgery the necessary patient records. 1.4. Maintain confidentiality of patient information according to with organisational procedures 1.5. Assist with the confirmation of the correct patient, site, and procedure
2. Prepare for dental procedures under conscious sedation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2.1. Prepare the equipment, instruments materials and medicaments for the planned procedure 2.2. Arrange instruments for dental procedure in order of use according to dental practitioner requirements 2.3. Provide personal protective equipment to patient and members of the dental team 2.4. Follow suite or theatre organisational procedures 2.5. Select and transfer safely the correct dental instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments 2.6. Store dental instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments at conclusion of procedure according to organisational procedures
3. Assist with patient discharge after undergoing dental procedures under conscious sedation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.1. Assisting in the provision of post-operative dental procedures according to organisational procedures 3.2. Ensure post-operative written instructions are communicated and provided by authorised person to patient, carer or escort 3.3. Assist in the authorised discharge of the patient to the carer or escort according to organisational procedures

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	review instructions.
Writing skills to:	store images
Oral communication skills to:	provide discharge information.
Numeracy skills to:	measure medicants.
Learning skills to:	review safety measures.

Range of conditions

N/A

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• prepare equipment and assist in handling and correctly positioning equipment for the practitioner during at least three different dental procedures, carried out under conscious sedation including oral or intravenous or intramuscular or inhalation including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ following procedures to ensure patient safety during conscious sedation○ correctly maintaining and storing instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments• support the dental team in the discharge care of at least one patient recovering from a dental procedure following conscious sedation including oral or, intravenous or intramuscular or inhalation.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• National and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ codes of practice○ discrimination○ duty of care○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent○ practice standards including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ Australian Dental Association▪ Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines▪ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure○ records management

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations○ work health and safety● dental practitioners who are authorised to administer conscious sedation to a patient, and the assessment process required before a dental procedure is carried out● levels of consciousness● work practices for maintaining the safety of the patient under conscious sedation● medications and drugs used in conscious sedation administered via the following routes:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ intravenous○ oral○ inhalation○ intramuscular injection● medications used to anaesthetise the site for sedation via intravenous route● risks associated with conscious sedation including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ potential for unintentional loss of consciousness○ depression of protective reflexes, respirations and cardiovascular system○ variations in response to drugs across the lifespan of individuals○ drug interactions● differing standards of equipment and staffing at the locations where procedures are performed● equipment used to administer conscious sedation and equipment used in monitoring a patient pre- and post-dental procedure● reasons for keeping accurate records of oral conditions, treatments and the administration of conscious sedation● reasons why patients need to follow pre- and post-operative instructions, and the importance of this
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • discharge instructions post-recovery and observation of patient into the care of a responsible person after authorisation from dental practitioner • medical emergencies and complications that may arise during and after conscious sedation and appropriate medical response and treatment given by the dental team. • organisational policies and procedures for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ intake and discharge of patients ○ confidentiality of patient information ○ suite or theatre used for dental procedures under conscious sedation.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental clinic workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ barrier protection materials ○ dental chair and unit ○ access to defibrillator ○ suctioning and practitioner lighting ○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessment must involve demonstration of tasks under the direction of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations' requirements for assessors and hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p>HLTDEN020 Assist in dental procedures during conscious sedation supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN006 Assist in oral health care procedures during conscious sedation.</p>

HLTDEN021X Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice

Unit code	HLTDEN021X	
Unit title	Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice	
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN007 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice.	
Modification history	Release	Comment
	3	
	2	HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	1	HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN007 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice.
Application	This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to minimise the risk of radiation to the patient, practitioner and others during the exposure of a prescribed dental radiographic image. It also describes the quality assurance measures that must be undertaken to ensure all radiographs are of consistent diagnostic standard.	

	<p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Apply the principles of radiation biology to protect patient, practitioner and others from ionising radiation	<p>1.1. Implement safe work practices to minimise risks to practitioner, patient and others of immediate and long-term effects of radiation.</p> <p>1.2. Correctly identify and select the exposure variables of dental X-ray generating equipment according to manufacturer's instructions and patient requirements.</p> <p>1.3. Apply the correct units of radiation dose.</p>
2. Determine image characteristics of dental radiographic image	2.1. Ensure visual qualities of the radiograph are of a diagnostic standard to minimise the necessity for re-takes.

	2.2. Ensure geometric qualities of the radiograph are of a diagnostic standard to minimise the necessity for re-takes.												
3. Minimise radiation by maintaining quality in processing	3.1. Ensure correct positioning of the radiation receptor. 3.2. Follow procedures for processing dental radiographic images to produce images of diagnostic standard. 3.3. Identify processing errors and implement corrective measures to produce a diagnostic radiograph. 3.4. Follow quality assurance and maintenance processes of all radiographic equipment according to manufacturer's instructions.												
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Skill</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Reading skills to:</td> <td>select radiographic techniques.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing skills to:</td> <td>document consent.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral communication skills to:</td> <td>prepare patient.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy skills to:</td> <td>select exposures.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Learning skills to:</td> <td>review imaging equipment.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Skill	Description	Reading skills to:	select radiographic techniques.	Writing skills to:	document consent.	Oral communication skills to:	prepare patient.	Numeracy skills to:	select exposures.	Learning skills to:	review imaging equipment.
Skill	Description												
Reading skills to:	select radiographic techniques.												
Writing skills to:	document consent.												
Oral communication skills to:	prepare patient.												
Numeracy skills to:	select exposures.												
Learning skills to:	review imaging equipment.												
Range of conditions	Dental radiography work must only be performed by a person with a radiation user licence granted by the relevant State/Territory regulatory authority under legislation.												
Assessment requirements													
Performance evidence	Evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit in the context of the job role, and:												

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply safe work practices during preparation of at least three patients for dental radiographic imaging procedures • apply appropriate quality assurance measures to the production of at least three radiographs to consistent diagnostic standard and apply techniques to minimise technical inaccuracies and errors
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>Demonstrated knowledge required to complete the tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work and how these are applied in organisations and individual practice including: • codes of practice and safety guide: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ radiation protection in dentistry ○ safe use of radiation ○ duty of care ○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent ○ current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure ○ radiation user licence ○ records management ○ work role boundaries, responsibilities and limitations ○ work health and safety • main components of an X-ray unit

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • production, properties and interactions of X-rays including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a basic knowledge of the interactions between atoms and X-rays ○ the sequence of events that result in the production of X-rays ○ hazards associated with X-rays including the mechanisms by which X-rays cause damage to human tissues • biological effects and risks associated with X-rays including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ units of radiation measurement ○ immediate or acute effects ○ long term or cumulative effects • procedures for processing a dental radiographic image of diagnostic standard • radiographic appearance of anatomic landmarks, normal dentition and associated bony structures • quality assurance processes used in the production of dental radiographic images • reasons for inaccuracies in radiographs and techniques for minimising errors
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental clinic workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ barrier protection equipment or materials for patient, practitioner and assistant ○ dental chair and unit ○ radiographs or sensors

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work. <p>Assessment must involve demonstration of tasks under the direction of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience and • a current radiation user licence
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN022X Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image

Unit code	HLTDEN022X								
Unit title	Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image								
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN008 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image.								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comment</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>3</td><td><i>Minor changes to application.</i></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td><i>HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN008 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	3	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>	2	HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	<i>HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN008 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image.</i>
	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>							
	3	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>							
	2	HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.							
1	<i>HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN008 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to interpret a prescribed request for a dental radiographic image. It also includes the preparation of the patient for dental radiography and the selection of equipment requirements.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p>								

	The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Interpret the request for the prescribed dental radiographic image	1.1. Interpret image request accurately using appropriate dental terminology 1.2. Determine situations where more information is required and ask the prescribing practitioner for clarification 1.3. Select and use appropriate exposure variables in accordance with manufacturers' instructions and patient requirements
2. Assess and determine the procedure prior to exposing a dental radiographic image.	2.1. Confirm patient identity and match to the request. 2.2. Determine the patient's ability to comply with instructions 2.3. Review modifications to the standard procedure with dental practitioner prior to implementation

	<p>2.4. Explain the procedure and necessary requirements clearly to the patient before commencement</p> <p>2.5. Obtain and document consent from the patient or carer</p> <p>2.6. Prepare patient prior to producing a dental radiographic image</p>
3. Select and prepare dental radiographic imaging equipment and accessories.	<p>3.1. Identify patient requirements and select correct dental radiographic imaging equipment for the procedure</p> <p>3.2. Select and use correct accessories for dental radiographic imaging</p> <p>3.3. Select relevant technical variables of the dental radiographic imaging equipment</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p>	
<i>Skill skills to:</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	interpret image request.
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	document consent.
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	explain procedure.
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	select exposures.
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	review imaging equipment.
Range of conditions	<i>Dental radiography work must only be performed by a person with a radiation user licence granted by the relevant State/Territory regulatory authority under legislation.</i>
Assessment requirements	
Performance evidence	The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage

	<p>contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • correctly interpret at least 3 different dental radiographic requests and prepare for procedure including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ confirming patient identity and consent ○ selecting correct radiographic imaging equipment using relevant technical variables for the requested radiographic procedure ○ using procedures to minimise the risk of radiation to the patient, the dental practitioner and others
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • features, characteristics and movements of a range of dental radiographic equipment associated with intraoral and extraoral units • national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work and how these are applied in organisations and in individual practice including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • codes of practice and safety guides: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ radiation protection in dentistry ○ safe use of radiation • duty of care • informed consent and statutory requirements of consent • practice standards including dental guidelines privacy, confidentiality and disclosure • radiation user licence

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • records management • work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations • work health and safety • radiographic appearance of anatomic landmarks, normal dentition and associated bony structures for dental radiograph images • radiographic appearance of dental anomalies and common oral pathological conditions • range of dental radiographic imaging techniques and the reasons for selection of each technique • reasons for inaccuracies in radiographs and techniques for minimising errors.
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Assessment of performance evidence may be in a dental clinic or an environment that accurately represents a real workplace.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ barrier protection materials ○ dental chair and unit ○ X-ray unit ○ practitioner and assistant protective equipment ○ radiographs or sensors ○ codes of practice and safety guides for radiation use • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work. <p>Assessment must involve demonstration of tasks under verbal or written prescription from a dental practitioner</p>

	<p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience and• a current radiation user licence
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN023X Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image

Unit code	HLTDEN023X								
Unit title	Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image								
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN009 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image.								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comment</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>3</td><td><i>Minor changes to application.</i></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td><i>HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN009 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	3	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>	2	HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	<i>HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN009 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>								
3	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>								
2	HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	<i>HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN009 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to operate dental radiographic equipment and position the patient correctly to produce an intraoral or extraoral diagnostic radiographic image.</p> <p>Where work relates to extraoral radiography this includes orthopantomogram (OPG) and may include lateral cephalograms for orthodontic radiographic workups and excludes cone beam images.</p>								

	<p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Position patient to obtain image	<p>1.1. Implement and maintain radiation safety measures for the patient, dental practitioner and others throughout the procedure</p> <p>1.2. Correctly position patient according to the radiographic receptor unit used.</p> <p>1.3. Ensure that communication with patient can be maintained after positioning.</p>
2. Position dental radiographic receptor	2.1. Select exposure variables on the dental radiographic unit for an intraoral or extraoral image according to manufacturers' instructions, organisational procedures and patient requirements

	<p>2.2. Select radiographic technique for an intraoral or extraoral image prescribed by dental practitioner for the oral structure under investigation</p> <p>2.3. Position receptor and adjust setting according to the prescribed request and patient's requirements</p> <p>2.4. Select and use locating devices or guides to apply the correct horizontal and vertical planes for the radiograph</p> <p>2.5. Use accessories when required, according to manufacturers' instructions</p>
<p>3. Operate radiographic imaging equipment safely to produce an intraoral or an extraoral image.</p>	<p>3.1. Operate intraoral or extraoral radiographic equipment according to manufacturers' instructions and legislative requirements for the safe use of radiation</p> <p>3.2. Ensure the patient remains visible throughout the procedure to observe positioning and safety precautions and expose the X-ray</p> <p>3.3. Remove the exposed intraoral dental radiographic receptor carefully from the mouth</p> <p>3.4. Separate the receptor and barrier sleeve when required</p> <p>3.5. Confirm that digital image is displayed correctly.</p> <p>3.6. Ensure the image is attached to the correct patient file</p>
<p>4. Process and provide quality assurance for the exposed dental image.</p>	<p>4.1. Process and view the image correctly</p> <p>4.2. Identify and correct artefacts</p> <p>4.3. Identify and critique errors in imaging technique to optimise exposure times for each individual patient</p> <p>4.4. Store de-identified images according to organisational policies and procedures</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p>	
<p><i>Skill</i></p>	<p><i>Description</i></p>
<p><i>Reading skills to:</i></p>	<p>implement safety measures.</p>

<i>Writing skills to:</i>	store images
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	interact with patients and dental team.
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	manage exposure time for radiographs.
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	review safety measures.

Assessment requirements

<p>Performance evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • produce and critique 30 diagnostic standard dental radiographic de-identified images in a simulated workplace environment including: • applying safe work practices for dental radiography work: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ following standard and additional precautions ○ operating a radiographic unit correctly ○ safely using radiation in dentistry • at least 20 of the above images must be intraoral radiographic de-identified images taken on a minimum of ten different people, demonstrating skills in periapical (PA) and bitewings (BW) • the remaining ten images must be extraoral radiographic de-identified images taken on a minimum of ten different people.
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage</p>

tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:

- national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work relevant to radiography, and how these are applied in organisations and in individual practice including:
- codes of practice and safety guides:
 - radiation protection in dentistry
 - safe use of radiation
- duty of care
- informed consent and statutory requirements of consent
- current Australian Dental Board and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards
- privacy, confidentiality and disclosure
- radiation user licence
- records management
- rights and responsibilities of workers, employers and patients
- work role boundaries, including responsibilities and limitations
- work health and safety
- dental radiographic imaging techniques and the reasons for selection of each technique
- features, characteristics and range of movements of dental radiographic equipment associated with intraoral and extraoral radiographic images
- radiographic appearance of anatomic landmarks, normal dentition and associated bony structures for intraoral and extra-oral radiographs

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • radiographic appearance of dental anomalies and common oral pathological conditions • sources for processing and technique inaccuracies and methods to minimise errors • requirements for personal wearable radiation monitoring devices that measures radiation exposure levels including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ its significance ○ where on the body the device is to be worn ○ when and where they are required to be worn ○ when they need replacing. • correct orientation for display of images • procedures for labelling and storage of radiographic images in accordance with organisational procedures
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Production of intraoral and extraoral radiographic images must be compliant with current State or Territory radiation licensing requirements. Where licensing requirements preclude the operation of extraoral equipment by Dental Assistants, all performance evidence may be collected via production of intraoral radiographic images.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ barrier protection materials ○ dental chair and unit

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ radiographic equipment suitable for taking intraoral or extra-oral radiographs ○ practitioner, patient and assistant protective equipment ○ processing equipment ○ radiographs or sensors ○ Australian Dental Board and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ● modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessment must involve demonstration of tasks under verbal or written prescription from a dental practitioner</p> <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience and ● a current radiation user licence
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -

HLTDEN024X Implement an oral hygiene program for older people

Unit code	HLTDEN024X								
Unit title	Implement an oral hygiene program for older people								
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN010 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people.								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comment</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>3</td><td><i>Minor changes to application.</i></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td><i>HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN010 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	3	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>	2	HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	<i>HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN010 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>								
3	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>								
2	HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	<i>HLTDEN024 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN010 Implement an oral hygiene program for older people.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to promote oral health for older people.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and other health care workers who are actively involved in promoting the general well-being of older patients through the promotion of healthy eating habits and good oral health.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>								

Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Assess the oral health needs of an older person.	<p>1.1. Check medical and dental history with patient or carer to confirm up-to-date information and confirm with treating practitioner prior to treatment</p> <p>1.2. Actively encourage patient to discuss oral health problems without embarrassment</p> <p>1.3. Identify oral health problems for older people and their relationship to general health problems</p> <p>1.4. Identify individualised factors that increase the risk of oral disease for older persons</p> <p>1.5. Look in patient's mouth while cleaning or assisting with oral care</p> <p>1.6. Identify patients with natural teeth, those who wear dentures and those who are non-denture wearers</p> <p>1.7. Identify problems that require referral to a dental practitioner</p>

<p>2. Provide support for the maintenance of oral hygiene for older persons.</p>	<p>2.1. Ensure flexibility of oral hygiene instruction taking into consideration patient's individual circumstances</p> <p>2.2. Provide an appropriate environment for oral hygiene instruction</p> <p>2.3. Plan and provide oral hygiene information to patients and carers using language and in a manner they can understand</p>
<p>3. Implement practical solutions to promote oral health.</p>	<p>3.1. Explain to patients and carers the importance of regular dental care to maintain quality of life</p> <p>3.2. Recommend lifestyle changes to assist the older person's diminished salivary flow in consultation with dental practitioner</p> <p>3.3. Provide appropriate information to patients and carers for healthy food habits that support oral health</p> <p>3.4. Actively encourage patients or carers to clean teeth or dentures after meals</p> <p>3.5. Engage carers with appropriate oral health care promotion programs and resources</p>
<p>4. Maintain oral health of people in residential aged care.</p>	<p>4.1. Ensure all removable dentures are identifiable with patient's details</p> <p>4.2. Record oral health in the patient's personal care plan</p> <p>4.3. Implement individual oral health programs in consultation with dental practitioner</p> <p>4.4. Assist patients with special needs to clean their teeth</p> <p>4.5. Assist patients or their carers to clean and maintain dentures</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	check medical and dental history.
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	document oral health.

<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	interact with patients and dental team.
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	measure salivary flow.
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	review procedures.

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • provide comprehensive information to at least 3 different older people or their carers including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ information regarding the prevention of oral disease ○ advice on and demonstration of oral hygiene techniques • select and prepare special aids for oral hygiene to assist at least three different older patients with limited dexterity • implement prevention programs to suit three different older patient's oral health care needs
Knowledge evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ codes of practice

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ discrimination○ duty of care○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent○ current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure○ records management○ work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations○ work health and safety● fundamental oral anatomy including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ structures of the oral cavity, hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth.○ teeth form and function○ dentition, arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth○ plaque and its differing roles in the development of dental caries and periodontal disease● saliva and its role in the maintenance of oral health including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ protecting teeth by neutralising acid○ acting as a lubricant○ delivering calcium, phosphate and fluoride to the tooth surface● factors that lead to the development of dental caries including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ bacteria in dental plaque○ diet
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ susceptible tooth surfaces○ socioeconomic background including dietary intake○ mental health conditions and awareness of oral health issues○ age of teeth● factors that prevent and control dental caries:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ increasing salivary flow and optimising its composition○ fluorides○ plaque control and removal○ dietary change○ oral health education● factors that lead to the development of periodontal disease including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ bacteria in dental plaque○ accumulation of plaque and calculus○ smoking○ medications○ age of teeth● factors that prevent and control periodontal disease including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ oral health education○ plaque control● causes and prevention of non-carious tooth wear including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ erosion○ abrasion○ attrition● economic and psychological factors that may affect the oral health of older people● the impact of smoking on oral soft tissues
--	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • systemic conditions and their pharmacology treatments that influence the development of oral disease • modification to standard toothbrushes and other aids for oral hygiene to meet the needs of patients with reduced dexterity • modifications to oral health education programs related to special needs due to disability, older age and dementia
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ personal protective equipment ○ cleaning equipment ○ disposable and non-disposable instruments ○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines • follow organisational infection prevention and control guidelines and procedures • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience

<p>Links</p> <p><i>Mandatory field – Do not edit, link will be created in TPC</i></p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p>
--	--

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN025X Implement an oral health promotion program

Unit code	HLTDEN025X									
Unit title	Implement an oral health promotion program									
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN011 Implement an oral health promotion program.									
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><i>Release</i></th> <th><i>Comments</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><i>Minor changes to application</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><i>HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN011 Implement an oral health promotion program.</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>	3	<i>Minor changes to application</i>	2	HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	<i>HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN011 Implement an oral health promotion program.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>									
3	<i>Minor changes to application</i>									
2	HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.									
1	<i>HLTDEN025 Implement an oral health promotion program supersedes and is equivalent to HLTDEN011 Implement an oral health promotion program.</i>									
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to implement an oral health promotion program.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and other health care workers who are actively involved in promoting general well-being through the promotion of healthy eating habits and good oral health.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>									

Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Deliver an oral health promotion program	<p>1.1. Identify target group and suitable teaching and learning styles to effectively communicate an oral health promotion program</p> <p>1.2. Consult with target group to identify oral health issues and potential for effective interventions</p> <p>1.3. Prepare oral health promotion materials suitable for use in a targeted approach</p> <p>1.4. Ensure flexibility of delivery of oral health promotion considering target group's location, economic and physical circumstances, language, culture and communication needs</p> <p>1.5. Actively involve community groups in health decision-making and in setting oral health promotion priorities</p> <p>1.6. Implement review strategy to determine the effectiveness of the oral health promotion program</p>

<p>2. Develop oral health promotion strategies for a target group</p>	<p>2.1. Provide detailed information on causes and prevention of oral diseases to identified target group using language that can be easily understood</p> <p>2.2. Develop and provide information on acids and fermentable carbohydrates in a manner that can be easily understood</p> <p>2.3. Involve the target group in a review of current dietary habits and development of an approach to healthy eating which improves general and oral health</p> <p>2.4. Provide information on lifestyle and behaviour for good oral health</p> <p>2.5. Provide an opportunity and environment for the target group to ask questions and become involved in oral health</p>
<p>3. Align oral health promotion with targeted priorities</p>	<p>3.1. Work collaboratively with other health care workers in a culturally sensitive and competent manner to address risk factors that oral diseases have in common with other diseases</p> <p>3.2. Personalise the delivery of health information so that it is directly relevant to the individual and clarifies the consequences of behaviour</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p>	
<p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p>	
<p><i>Skill</i></p>	<p><i>Description</i></p>
<p><i>Reading skills to:</i></p>	<p>provide information</p>
<p><i>Writing skills to:</i></p>	<p>personalise health information</p>
<p><i>Oral communication skills to:</i></p>	<p>provide health information</p>
<p><i>Learning skills to:</i></p>	<p>provide health information</p>
<p align="center">Assessment requirements</p>	

<p>Performance evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • developed at least one oral health program for a specific target group within the community, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ identifying the target group and key concerns ○ developing specific promotion strategies and resources to reach the target group ○ integrating promotion with targeted National Health Priorities • facilitated discussion with a group of at least five people on oral health care including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ causes and prevention of oral diseases ○ dietary habits and the impact of healthy eating on oral health ○ behavioural change for improved oral health
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fundamental oral anatomy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ structures of the oral cavity, hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function ○ dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ arrangement of the teeth ▪ naming of teeth

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ coding of teeth• nutritional requirements for children, adolescents, adults and the elderly, including National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) dietary guidelines• national, State or Territory or local oral health promotion priorities, programs or strategies• approaches to health promotion delivery and appropriate resources to specific target groups• plaque and its differing roles in the development of dental caries and periodontal disease• saliva and its role in the maintenance of oral health including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ protecting teeth by neutralising acid○ acting as a lubricant○ delivering calcium, phosphate and fluoride to the tooth surface• factors that lead to the development of dental caries including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ bacteria in dental plaque○ diet○ susceptible tooth surfaces• factors that prevent and control dental caries including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ increasing salivary flow and optimising its composition○ fluorides○ plaque control and removal○ dietary change• factors that lead to the development of periodontal disease including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ bacteria in dental plaque
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ accumulation of plaque and calculus ○ smoking ● factors that prevent and control periodontal disease including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ patient education ○ plaque control ● systemic conditions which influence the development of oral disease ● local oral factors that influence the development of oral disease including modifications to oral health education programs related to special needs due to disability, older age and childhood ● causes and prevention of non caries tooth wear including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ erosion ○ abrasion ○ attrition ● the role of properly constructed and fitted mouthguards in preventing dental injuries ● the impact of smoking on oral soft tissues
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) dietary guidelines ○ national, State or Territory or local oral health promotion priorities, programs or strategies ○ health promotion delivery resources

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• modelling of industry operating conditions, including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN026X Take an impression for study models

Unit code	HLTDEN026X								
Unit title	Take an impression for study models								
Unit mapping information	HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN012 Take an impression for study models.								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comment</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>3</td><td><i>Minor changes to application</i></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td><i>HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN012 Take an impression for study models.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	3	<i>Minor changes to application</i>	2	HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	<i>HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN012 Take an impression for study models.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>								
3	<i>Minor changes to application</i>								
2	HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	<i>HLTDEN026 Take an impression for study models supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN012 Take an impression for study models.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to take an accurate impression of teeth and their supporting structures for the construction of study models as prescribed by the dental practitioner.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>								

Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Assess the patient	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.1. Confirm patient's medical history and review with dental practitioner 1.2. Provide full details of the procedure to patient or carer 1.3. Obtain and document consent adhering to ethical and legal requirements 1.4. Select equipment and instruments for the impression 1.5. Prepare personal protective equipment for patient and members of the dental team
2. Select appropriate impression tray	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2.1. Check position of the dental chair and patient for the procedure 2.2. Impression tray for size and modify as required to ensure accuracy and comfort 2.3. Instruct patient on participation during the procedure 2.4. Follow infection prevention and control procedures

<p>3. Prepare impression material</p>	<p>3.1. Select impression material in accordance with desired outcome</p> <p>3.2. Mix the impression material to correct consistency and quantity required according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
<p>4. Perform impression-taking procedure</p>	<p>4.1. Implement standard precautions during impression-taking</p> <p>4.2. Remove saliva from the occlusal surfaces</p> <p>4.3. Load tray with an appropriate amount of impression material and seat the tray from the back using gentle pressure</p> <p>4.4. Ensure the impression extends to and surrounds dental hard tissue structures</p> <p>4.5. Ensure the impression has adequate extension into the buccal sulcus and vestibule</p> <p>4.6. Carry out muscle trimming after seating the impression</p> <p>4.7. Monitor and reassure the patient throughout the procedure including gag reflex</p> <p>4.8. Remove the impression when set</p> <p>4.9. Examine patient's mouth for injury and impression material debris following removal of the impression</p> <p>4.10. Restore patient's comfort and appearance</p>
<p>5. Assess the impression</p>	<p>5.1. Assess the quality of the impression for the required study model</p> <p>5.2. Identify common impression-taking problems</p> <p>5.3. Document details of the procedure according to organisational policies</p>
<p>6. Decontaminate the impression</p>	<p>6.1. Implement standard precautions during impression-taking</p> <p>6.2. Rinse the impression or denture in cold running tap water to remove all traces of saliva and blood</p> <p>6.3. Clean the impression in a suitable solution</p>

	<p>6.4. Rinse the impression until all visible contamination is removed</p> <p>6.5. Identify and correctly label impression and record procedure</p>
--	--

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	confirm medical histories
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	document procedures
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	interact with patients and dental team
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	measure impression material
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	review standard precautions

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> undertake 10 impression procedures on a minimum of at least 5 different people for study models ensuring patient safety and meeting the clinical requirements.
Knowledge evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ codes of practice○ discrimination○ duty of care○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent○ practice standards and dental guidelines○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure○ infection prevention and control guidelines and procedures○ records management○ work boundaries including responsibilities and limitations○ work health and safety• current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards.• fundamental oral anatomy:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ dentition, arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth○ structures of the oral cavity, hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth○ teeth form and function• principles and practices which underpin interpersonal communication• principles of quality assurance and work effectiveness• rationale and objectives for the taking of impressions for study models
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • impression materials suitable for creating impressions for study models • appropriate mechanisms for managing a gag reflex • appropriate responses to patient's reactions during impression taking procedure • organisational policies for documenting dental procedures
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic with the addition of simulations and scenarios in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dental chair and unit ○ impression material and equipment ○ syringe suitable for saliva removal ○ materials and mixing equipment ○ practitioner, assistant and patient personal protective equipment ○ waste disposal equipment ○ Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • hold a minimum of five years clinical dental experience

Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -
--------------	---

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN027X Take a clinical photograph

Unit code	HLTDEN027X								
Unit title	Take a clinical photograph								
Unit mapping information	<p><i>Specifies code and title of any unit of competency that has a superseding relationship with this unit.</i></p> <p><i>If the unit is completely new, and shares no outcomes with a previous unit, use the text: No equivalent unit.</i></p>								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comment</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><i>3</i></td><td><i>Minor changes to application.</i></td></tr><tr><td><i>2</i></td><td><i>Release 2 HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph.</i> <i>Updated:</i> <i>Mapping details and minor corrections.</i></td></tr><tr><td><i>1</i></td><td><i>HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN014 Take a clinical photograph.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>Release 2 HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph.</i> <i>Updated:</i> <i>Mapping details and minor corrections.</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN014 Take a clinical photograph.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>								
<i>3</i>	<i>Minor changes to application.</i>								
<i>2</i>	<i>Release 2 HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph.</i> <i>Updated:</i> <i>Mapping details and minor corrections.</i>								
<i>1</i>	<i>HLTDEN027 Take a clinical photograph supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTDEN014 Take a clinical photograph.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to take a clinical dental photograph under conditions that can be reproduced.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>								

Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare patient and interpret request for photography.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.1. Interpret request and provide full details of the procedure to patient or carer 1.2. Obtain and document consent adhering to ethical and legal requirements 1.3. Prepare accessories for intraoral photography 1.4. Prepare personal protective equipment for members of the dental team
2. Prepare to take the photograph.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2.1. Compose the image so that the most important aspects are in the centre of the photograph 2.2. Orientate the image so that subsequent photos are reproducible 2.3. Locate the image source to be photographed appropriately in the depth of field so that the photograph is in complete focus 2.4. Check the viewfinder to ensure there are no obstructions to the image

<p>3. Take required intraoral views using a standardised approach.</p>	<p>3.1. Position the patient so that conditions for photography are reproducible</p> <p>3.2. Stand in a stable position for standard intraoral views that are reproducible for all photographs</p> <p>3.3. Select the magnification ratio according to the desired frame and focus and manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.4. Provide instruction on suitable mirror or retractor placement</p> <p>3.5. Frame the image and ensure positioning of retractors and mirrors is correct</p> <p>3.6. Use appropriate lighting so that the image is not overexposed</p>
--	--

<p>4. Take a portrait and profile photograph.</p>	<p>4.1. Explain the purpose of the photograph to the patient</p> <p>4.2. Choose the background colour and texture so that a full assessment of the profile can be made</p> <p>4.3. Follow guidelines to position the camera and the patient to ensure reproducible results</p> <p>4.4. Use a vertical format to completely fill the frame</p> <p>4.5. Take standard dental portrait views that ensure images can be reproduced.</p>
---	---

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	interpret requests
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	choose background for photographs
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	explain purpose of photographs
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	select magnification ratio
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	take dental portraits

Assessment requirements	
Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • take and critique 50 clinical dental de-identified photographs, including intraoral and extraoral de-identified images • store the resulting image data
Knowledge evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ codes of practice ○ discrimination ○ duty of care ○ informed consent and statutory requirements of consent ○ current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ○ current Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines ○ privacy, confidentiality and disclosure ○ records management

- work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations
- work health and safety
- fundamental oral anatomy:
 - dentition, arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth
 - structures of the oral cavity, hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth
 - teeth, form and function
- fundamentals of photography, including:
 - basic knowledge of camera systems appropriate for dental photography
 - ability to reproduce photographic conditions
 - appropriate reproduction ratio
 - reduction of image contents either through an appropriate scale or through selective focusing
- rationale and objectives for taking clinical photographs under conditions that can be reproduced including the need for:
 - basic views to record a patient's clinical condition during the initial patient visit
 - communication of information to the patient, and between practitioners, doctors and laboratories
 - documentation of processes and stages of treatment
 - documentation of the state and changes to the teeth and mucous membranes of the mouth
 - illustration for teaching and research
 - quality control of treatment outcomes.

Assessment conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ digital camera and accessories ○ access to de-identified patient records and data systems to record procedure and store images ○ current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors.</p>
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -

HLTDEN028X Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan

Unit code	HLTDEN028X									
Unit title	Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan									
Unit mapping information	<p><i>Specifies code and title of any unit of competency that has a superseding relationship with this unit.</i></p> <p><i>If the unit is completely new, and shares no outcomes with a previous unit, use the text: No equivalent unit.</i></p>									
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Release</th> <th>Comments</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Minor change to application.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td> HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections. </td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Release	Comments	3	Minor change to application.	2	HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene
	Release	Comments								
	3	Minor change to application.								
	2	HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene									
3	Minor change to application.									
2	HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.									
1	HLTDEN028 Provide effective oral hygiene									

	<p>instruction to patients with an oral health treatment plan. New unit. No equivalent unit.</p>
<p>Application</p>	<p>This unit describes the skills and knowledge required to provide oral hygiene information and instruction to patients to promote and support effective home care oral health practices.</p> <p>The skills and knowledge will enable the candidate to provide instruction on oral hygiene techniques and accurate selection of basic oral hygiene products and aids for individual patient needs.</p> <p>This unit applies to workers in a dental practice setting whose work roles provide them with an opportunity to instruct and support patients in effective oral hygiene care within an oral health treatment plan under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
<p>Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements</p>	<p>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</p>

Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Prepare information related to planned oral hygiene instruction.	<p>1.1. Identify oral hygiene products and aids required by reviewing patient treatment plan or discussing with the dental practitioner.</p> <p>1.2. Prepare relevant and reputable resources or visual aids to assist in the explanation of the oral hygiene instruction.</p> <p>1.3. Seek additional information from patient by questioning and clarifying current home-care oral hygiene routines.</p> <p>1.4. Respond to questions and concerns by selecting relevant take home information for patient that is specific to the individual needs.</p>
2. Provide information and instruction on oral hygiene self-care techniques and appropriate aids.	<p>2.1. Select oral hygiene aids with suitable features to address individual patient needs including, age, current condition and intended outcomes according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.2. Explain the advantages of selected oral hygiene aids in terms of achieving</p>

	<p>and maintaining effective oral hygiene practices</p> <p>2.3. Discuss the relationship of poor oral health practices with increased risk of oral disease</p> <p>2.4. Instruct patient in appropriate tooth brushing techniques and the use of any additional oral hygiene aids</p> <p>2.5. Provide feedback to patient on the demonstration of oral hygiene instruction skills</p> <p>2.6. Reinforce to patient the importance of regular oral health checks with a dental practitioner</p>
<p>3. Provide additional information and instruction to patients with specific oral health needs.</p>	<p>3.1. Provide instructions and demonstrate the care of fixed or removable prosthodontic dental appliances</p> <p>3.2. Provide instruction for patients with periodontal conditions</p> <p>3.3. Provide instruction for patients with special needs</p> <p>3.4. Provide instruction and demonstrate the care of fixed or removable orthodontic dental appliances</p> <p>3.5. Encourage and support patients with dental appliances to follow effective self-care techniques for the specific appliances</p>

<p>4. Select appropriate and evidenced based oral hygiene products to support oral hygiene instruction.</p>	<p>4.1. Compare fluoride concentrations in different products and select a product that is appropriate for the patient age and caries risk, as identified by the dental practitioner</p> <p>4.2. Demonstrate dispensing of the correct amount of toothpaste onto a toothbrush</p> <p>4.3. Select and discuss a range of dental chemotherapeutic products that address specific conditions including hypersensitivity and gingival inflammation</p> <p>4.4. Seek clarification from practitioner regarding chemotherapeutic product options when required</p>
---	--

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	provide information to patient
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	complete instructions
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	interact with dental team and seek information from patient
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	compare concentrations
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	amend care instructions

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of
-----------------------------	--

this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- provide oral hygiene information and instruction to at least 3 patients to address their oral health care needs including:
 - selecting suitable oral hygiene aids, including proximal cleaning aids, for a person with:
 - fixed or removable prosthodontic appliances
 - fixed or removable orthodontic appliances
 - general oral health care needs
- select a suitable chemotherapeutic product to support oral health care needs for a patient with each the following conditions:
 - high caries risk
 - dry mouth
 - gingivitis
- provide effective oral hygiene instruction and information to at least three patients including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ demonstrating of how to use chosen oral hygiene aids ○ discussing risk associated with poor oral hygiene habits ○ providing encouragement and support the patient implement home care oral health regimes as recommended by the practitioner.
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • basic anatomy and physiology underpinning oral health, including what is considered healthy and unhealthy • patient behaviour and habits which contribute to oral health issues • National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) Fluoride Guidelines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ safety ○ effectiveness of fluoride

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• causes and prevention of tooth decay, gum disease and tooth wear including erosion, abrasion and attrition• effective self-care practices for oral health including cause, control and prevention of dental biofilm factors that impact on oral health, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ neglect of oral health needs including poor oral hygiene○ access to dental and health services○ diet and nutrition, including fluids and excessive intake of sugar○ available over the counter chemotherapeutics to prevent or manage oral disease○ presence of plaque and calculus○ psychological issues○ social and cultural determinants of health○ susceptible tooth surfaces○ role of saliva in caries risk• healthy eating and drinking recommendations as identified in
--	--

	<p>National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • special needs of patients <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ chronic conditions ○ ageing ○ disabilities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ physical ▪ cognitive ○ smokers • features of toothbrushes that contribute to improved oral hygiene
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including a range of chemotherapeutics and oral hygiene aids • access to current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards • access to National Health and Medical Research Council's

	<p>(NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • modelling of industry operating conditions, including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors.</p>
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN029X Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia

Unit code	HLTDEN029X								
Unit title	Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia								
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comments</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>3</td><td><i>Minor change to application.</i></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Release 2 HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td><i>HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia no equivalent unit.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>	3	<i>Minor change to application.</i>	2	Release 2 HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	<i>HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia no equivalent unit.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>								
3	<i>Minor change to application.</i>								
2	Release 2 HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	<i>HLTDEN029 Assist in dental procedures during relative analgesia no equivalent unit.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to assist the dentist or dental specialist in carrying out dental procedures on patients under relative analgesia (RA).</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of the dental practitioner.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>								

Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	HLTDA303D Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures <i>or</i> HLTDEN001 Prepare for and assist with oral health care procedures <i>or</i> HLTDEN015 Prepare for and assist with dental procedures
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements define the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate the achievement of the element.
1. Check gas supplies and equipment prior to patient arrival.	1.1. Ensure adequate levels of nitrous and oxygen gas supply available 1.2. Check selection of nose piece sizes available 1.3. Prepare patient personal protective equipment compatible with relative analgesia nosepiece 1.4. Check bag and hoses for damage or deterioration 1.5. Confirm scavenger equipment functioning 1.6. Check pulse oximetry equipment is functional
2. Prepare the patient for dental procedures during relative analgesia.	2.1. Confirm and document arrangements for an escort for patient following the procedure 2.2. Check patient's ability to breathe through nose 2.3. Ensure patient dental records accessible in the surgery clean

	<p>2.4. Maintain confidentiality of patient information in accordance with organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.5. Assist with the confirmation of the correct patient, site, and procedure.</p>
<p>3. Select and prepare equipment, instruments, materials and medicaments for use during relative analgesia.</p>	<p>3.1. Prepare resuscitation equipment, instruments, materials and medicaments according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.2. Arrange instruments for dental procedures in order of use, according to practitioner requirements.</p> <p>3.3. Provide personal protective equipment (PPE) to the patient.</p> <p>3.4. Select and transfer safely the correct dental instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments.</p>
<p>4. Assist patient undergoing dental procedures during relative analgesia delivery and post procedure recovery.</p>	<p>4.1. Provide assistance during pre and post-operative dental procedures</p> <p>4.2. Monitor and record patient pulse</p> <p>4.3. Monitor and report patient response and reflexes</p> <p>4.4. Note flow rate, times, level and report as required to the dental practitioner</p> <p>4.5. Disassemble and decontaminate equipment according to organisational procedures</p> <p>4.6. Remain in operatory room during administration of relative analgesia</p> <p>4.7. Confirm post-operative written instructions are communicated and provided by authorised person to patient, carer or escort</p> <p>4.8. Assist in the authorised discharge of patient to the carer or escort</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p>	
<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>

<i>Reading skills to:</i>	manage patient records	
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	manage patient records; complete reports	
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	work with patients and dental team	
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	Check expiry dates of medicants	
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	confirm instructions	
Range of conditions	Assessment must involve demonstration of tasks under the direction of a dental practitioner qualified to use relative analgesia.	
Assessment requirements		
Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepared equipment and assist in handling and correctly positioning equipment for the dental practitioner during at least one dental procedure carried out during administration of relative analgesia: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ consistently applying safe work practices to ensure patient safety during administration of relative analgesia. ○ correctly maintaining and storing instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments. • supported the dental team in the discharge care of at least one patient recovering from a dental procedure following relative analgesia. 	

Knowledge evidence

The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:

- national and State or Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including:
 - codes of practice
 - discrimination
 - duty of care
 - informed consent and statutory requirements of consent
 - Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards
 - privacy, confidentiality and disclosure
 - records management
 - work role boundaries including responsibilities and limitations
 - work health and safety procedures (WHS)
- practitioners who are authorised to administer relative analgesia to a patient, and the assessment process required before dental procedure is carried out
- levels of consciousness
- gases used for relative analgesia
- basic history of relative analgesia used in dental treatment
- basic properties of nitrous oxide and oxygen gases and contraindications management of

risks and safeguards associated with relative analgesia including but not limited to:

- ANZCA PS09 Guideline on sedation and analgesia for diagnostic and interventional medical, dental or surgical procedures
- storage of cylinders including work health and safety (WHS) regulations
- international colour code of regional analgesia gas cylinders
- safe management of patient behavioural changes
- unconsciousness
- nausea
- differing standards of equipment and staffing at the locations where procedures are performed
- instructions for use of resuscitation equipment or defibrillator
- basic functions and maintenance of equipment used to administer relative analgesia including anti-hypoxic device, flow rate, scavenger hose, non-return valve and equipment used in monitoring a patient pre and post-dental procedure
- keeping accurate records of oral conditions, treatments and the administration of relative analgesia
- patients need to follow pre and post-operative instructions, and the importance of this
- discharge instructions post-recovery and observation of patient into the care of a responsible person after authorisation from dental practitioner

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ medical emergencies and complications that may arise during and after relative analgesia and appropriate medical response and treatment given by the dental team
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ barrier protection materials ○ dental chair and unit ○ functioning relative analgesia delivery equipment ○ oxygen and nitrous oxide gas flow ○ access to resuscitation equipment ○ suctioning and practitioner lighting ○ waste disposal equipment • access to current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards • access to current Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines • access to NZCA PS09 Guideline on sedation and analgesia for diagnostic and interventional medical, dental or surgical procedures • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work

	Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors.
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEN030X Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting

Unit code	HLTDEN030X									
Unit title	Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting									
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.									
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Release</th> <th>Comments</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting no equivalent unit.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Release	Comments	3		2	HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting no equivalent unit.
	Release	Comments								
	3									
	2	HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	HLTDEN030 Assist the dental practitioner during medical emergencies in a dental setting no equivalent unit.									
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to assist the dentist or dental specialist with patient care during medical emergencies in a dental setting.</p> <p>This unit applies to dental assistants and those carrying out dental assisting work under the instruction and supervision of a dental practitioner.</p>									

	The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DEN
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare for medical emergencies	1.1. Check expiry of medicaments used during medical emergencies. 1.2. Check first aid supplies and operational status of equipment. 1.3. Locate and have readily available onsite first aid kit.
2. Respond to a medical emergency	2.1. Recognise indicators that signify a medical emergency. 2.2. Identify and minimise immediate risks to health and safety of self and others. 2.3. Provide assistance as directed by the dental practitioner.
3. Assist with dental medical emergencies	3.1. Assist dental practitioner to manage patient with low blood pressure according to organisational procedures

	<p>3.2. Assist dental practitioner to manage patient with a cardiac emergency according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.3. Assist the dental practitioner to manage a patient with a diabetic emergency according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.4. Assist the dental practitioner to manage a patient with an allergy emergency according to organisational procedures</p>
4. Seek assistance from emergency response services	<p>4.1. Recognise situations requiring a response from emergency services</p> <p>4.2. Contact emergency response services according to organisational procedures</p> <p>4.3. Provide emergency response services with medical details, address and access requirements regarding the medical emergency</p>
5. Assist with maintaining patient comfort	<p>5.1. Assist with ensuring physical comfort of the patient</p> <p>5.2. Provide verbal reassurance and support to the patient</p>
6. Record details of the emergency	<p>6.1. Document incident details as directed by the dental practitioner according to organisational procedures</p> <p>6.2. Maintain confidentiality of patient information</p> <p>6.3. Disclose patient information to others according to organisational procedures</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p><i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i></p>	
<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	check expiry dates of medicants
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	document incidents

<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	interact with patient, dental team and emergency services
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	confirm expiry dates
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	manage patient information

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • responded to at least one simulated emergency response situation, contextualised to the candidate's workplace, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ demonstrated correct response for a medical emergency that is identified by the dental practitioner ○ prepared equipment or medicaments for an identified medical emergency ○ applied safe handling techniques ○ provided an accurate verbal or written report of the incident as directed by the practitioner
Knowledge evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • emergency response procedures for the dental team including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ responsibilities of each person within the team

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ own role and responsibilities within the emergency response procedure● information to assist with medical emergencies in the dental setting including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ patient medical history○ patient emergency contact details● general emergency response requirements:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ DRSABCD● common indicators, causes and emergency response required for medical emergencies in the dental setting including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ anxiety○ sensitivity or allergic reaction to latex and other allergens○ cardiac emergencies including angina and myocardial infarction○ asthma○ obstruction of the airway including choking○ diabetes○ epilepsy○ syncope○ hypoglycaemia○ hyperglycaemia○ hyperventilation○ haemorrhage○ ocular incidents○ muscular paralysis○ stroke○ chemical burns<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ silver fluoride or diamine▪ phosphoric acid▪ hydrochloric acid
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • maintenance and storage requirements for medicaments and emergency equipment including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ storage requirements for schedules of drugs which can be legally stored in dental premises ○ relevance of expiry dates ○ maintenance requirements for automated external defibrillators • organisational policies and procedures for disclosing patient information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ privacy requirements ○ appropriate disclosure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ incident forms ▪ reports to supervisor ▪ other staff ▪ emergency contacts or carers ▪ insurance or health funds
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental clinic or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ simulated or real medicaments required for medical emergency situations including but not limited to epinephrine, glucose and albuterol ○ equipment required for medical emergency situations including automated external defibrillator (AED), operational or training device ○ dental chair

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• access to organisational procedures for responding to medical emergencies• modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in dental assisting work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors.</p>
Links	Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEP001X Identify, select and prepare instruments, equipment and materials

Unit code	HLTDEP001X Identify, select and prepare instruments, equipment and materials	
Unit title <i>Mandatory field</i>		
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>240 work placement hours.</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP601D</p>
	Release 2	Major changes to application, performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to identify, select and prepare appropriate instruments, equipment, materials and medicaments for specific removable dental prosthetic procedures.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	

Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare the clinic for the removable dental prosthetic treatment of patients	1.1 Locate patient's charts and records in the surgery clean zone according to organisational procedures 1.2 Provide patient and dental team members with personal protective equipment 1.3 Confirm emergency procedures according to organisational procedures
2. Identify and select instruments and equipment for a range of removable dental prosthetic procedures	2.1 Implement infection prevention and control guidelines 2.2 Select equipment, instruments and materials for the planned prosthetic procedure 2.3 Arrange instruments in order of use for a range of prosthetic procedures
3. Prepare instruments and equipment for the range of removable dental prosthetic procedures	3.1 Prepare instruments and equipment according to manufacturers' instructions and organisational procedures 3.2 Maintain and store instruments and equipment according to manufacturers' instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
4. Prepare materials according to manufacturers' instructions for the range of removable dental prosthetic procedures	4.1 Prepare materials and medicaments according to manufacturers instruction and organisational procedures 4.2 Monitor storage requirements and shelf life of materials and medicaments 4.3 Confirm integrity of materials prior to use according to manufacturers instructions for use and organisational procedures 4.4 Monitor expiry dates of materials and medicaments according to manufacturer's instructions for use and organisational procedures 4.5 Re-order materials correctly according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures 4.5 Store materials and medicaments according to manufacturers' instructions 4.6 Minimise aerosols and splatter contamination to surgery clean zone according to infection prevention and control guidelines and organisational procedures 4.7 Prepare materials according to workplace health and safety procedures and manufacturer's instructions

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	use patient charts and records; monitor expiry dates; infection prevention and control guidelines, manufacturer's instructions for use; organisational procedures
Writing skills to:	complete material orders
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with patients and dental team
Numeracy skills to:	prepare materials

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment
-----------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prepared the clinic for at least 4 different dental prosthetic procedures including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • located patient’s required laboratory work and necessary charts and records • selected and prepared instruments and equipment for specific procedures • prepared relevant materials and medicaments for treatment • maintained and stored equipment • applied standard and additional precautions during preparation for 4 different prosthetic procedures including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • used personal protective equipment • used clean and sterile techniques where appropriate <p style="text-align: right;">maintained and stored equipment in good working order.</p>
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures, • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, and • organisation policies relating to dental laboratory work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ personal hygiene practices especially washing and drying hands before and after patient contact ○ appropriate reprocessing and storage of reusable instruments ○ aseptic technique ○ safe handling and disposal of sharps and other clinical waste ○ surface cleaning and management of blood and body fluid spills ○ techniques to limit contamination ○ decontamination of completed laboratory work ○ personal protective equipment and their use according to the National Safety and Quality Health Service (NSQHS) Standards ○ dental practice or organisation policy and procedures, including registration standards and guidelines ○ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • factors influencing medical and dental emergencies and the appropriate response.

Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions. Where simulation is used, it must reflect real working conditions by modelling industry operating conditions and contingencies, as well as using suitable facilities, equipment and resources. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures, ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ materials and medicants ○ modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) 2015/AQF mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<p><i>No equivalent unit.</i></p>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



HLTDEP002X Gather data, conduct dental prosthetic examination and develop treatment plan

Unit code	HLTDEP002X	
Unit title	Gather data, conduct dental prosthetic examination and develop treatment plan	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP602D</p>
	Release 2	<p>Minor changes to application. Minor changes to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence</p>
Application <i>Mandatory field</i>	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to obtain accurate, complete and legal records of the patient's personal, medical and dental information in order to develop a treatment plan prior to removable dental prosthetic treatment.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<p><i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i></p>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	

Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Obtain a complete patient history	1.1 Obtain patient's personal, medical and dental history 1.2 Confirm accuracy of information with patient or carer or guardian 1.3 Confirm information with practitioner, where required according to legislation and organisational procedures
2. Consult medical history of patient	2.1 Determine requirements for removable dental prosthetic treatment according to medical history
3. Obtain and record patient data	3.1 Record relevant information legibly 3.2 Assist patient, carer or guardian to complete data forms as required 3.3 Document consent according to ethical and legal requirements 3.4 Obtain patient, carer or guardian's signature to signify accuracy of the statement 3.5 Maintain patient confidentiality according to organisational procedures
4. Assess oral status for removable dental prosthetic procedures	4.1 Assess intra-oral status according to legislation and organisational procedures 4.2 Modify examination procedures according to needs of patient and organisational procedures 4.3 Refer patient for examination by dentist according to organisational procedures
5. Develop a removable dental prosthetic treatment plan	5.1 Interpret and evaluate the results of removable dental prosthetic examination 5.2 Develop patient treatment plan according to patient's medical, medication and dental history 5.3 Complete prosthetic assessment according to organisation procedures 5.4 Consult dentist or doctor according to legislative guidelines 5.5 Refer patient to dentist or doctor according to organisational techniques 5.6 Observe centric and eccentric mandibular movements
6. Obtain patient, carer or guardian consent	6.1 Discuss treatment with patient, carer or guardian using language that is understandable to them 6.2 Confirm details about removable dental prosthetic treatment and alternative options including the risks and benefits of the treatment

	<p>6.3 Allow sufficient time to discuss treatment options with patient, carer or guardian</p> <p>6.4 Support patients understanding of the effects of treatment or no treatment, and clarify patient preferences</p> <p>6.5 Provide flexibility of patient services to consider the patient's special needs according to organisational procedures</p> <p>6.6 Obtain and document consent following according to organisational procedures</p>
--	--

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Writing skills to:	obtain patient's personal, medical and dental history; document consent
Reading skills to:	obtain patient consent; follow manufacturer's instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with patients and dental team

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

<p>Performance Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has completed the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment • performed an intra-oral and an extra-oral examination on at least 4 patients including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ followed infection prevention and control guidelines and organisational procedures during examinations ○ communicated with patients including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ effective, interactive, respectful and reflective communication ▪ taking into account factors including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ age ▪ intellectual development ▪ social and cultural background ○ explained the treatment plan and the limitations of treatment for 4 patients using language that is easily understood by the patient • maintained legible and accurate maintenance records for 4 different patients.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control guidelines • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation requirements • organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work • relevance of medical conditions and medications impact oral health or make the provision of dental treatment unsafe • national and State/Territory legal and ethical requirements and considerations for dental assisting work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ codes of practice ○ discrimination ○ duty of care

- informed consent and statutory requirements of consent including:
 - privacy, confidentiality and disclosure
 - records management
 - work role boundaries, responsibilities and limitations
 - work health and safety

- oral pathology, including:
 - benign lesions of bone
 - dental caries and periodontal disease
 - infectious diseases including bacterial, fungal and viral infections
 - inflammation
 - oral cancer
 - pathology of dental caries and periodontal disease
 - physical injuries to soft tissue including burns and ulceration
 - reactive connective tissue including hyperplasia
 - regeneration and repair
 - signs and symptoms of infectious diseases that affect the oral cavity including oral fungal and bacterial infections
 - the causes of dental caries and periodontal disease
 - the role of bacteria, diet and dental plaque

- considerations when using dental and medical records and charts including:
 - confidentiality of patient records
 - notation systems and charting symbols for tooth surfaces, cavities and other dental problems in accordance with codes and guidelines
 - items that constitute a dental record
 - knowledge of correct dental terminology and how it is used in dental charting
 - the purpose and requirements for maintaining accurate records of examination, treatments, materials used and drugs and medicaments prescribed
 - the reasons for taking radiographs and photograph

- components of intra-oral and extra-oral examination
- retracting soft tissues and moisture control including:
 - methods of retracting and protecting soft tissue
 - methods for providing a clear field of vision
 - methods for controlling moisture

- normal variance of structure and function of dental prosthetic devices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • procedures and rationale for referral • specific considerations when dealing with patients who are elderly or aged, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ fundamental knowledge of systemic disease including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ angina ▪ congestive heart failure ▪ stroke ▪ Parkinson’s disease ▪ diabetes ▪ osteoporosis ▪ arthritis ▪ nutritional deficiencies ○ fundamental knowledge of the relationship between nutrition and the efficiency of the dentition ○ psychological changes ○ xerostomia produced by certain medications and its adverse effects on denture retention and comfort • cultural issues which may affect dental examinations and treatment.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ dental and medical records and charts ○ personal protective equipment ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ organisational procedures ○ modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) 2015/AQF mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p><i>No equivalent unit.</i></p>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



HLTDEP003X Take impressions

Unit code	HLTDEP003X	
Unit title	Take impressions	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP603C</p>
	Release 2	Major changes to application. Minor changes to performance criteria, performance evidence, knowledge evidence and assessment conditions
Application <i>Mandatory field</i>	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to take a range of impressions for patients who are dentate or edentulous.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Assess the patient	1.1 Confirm the patient's medical history 1.2 Provide full details of the procedure to the patient or where appropriate to their carer 1.3 Obtain and document consent according to ethical and legal requirements 1.4 Select the equipment and instruments for the impression 1.5 Prepare personal protective equipment for the patient and members of the dental team 1.6 Adjust the dental clinic set-up to accommodate the patient's needs
2. Select impression tray and modify if required	2.1 Select an appropriate impression tray for the technique and the patient 2.2 Modify the impression tray
3. Select and prepare impression materials	3.1 Select impression materials to ensure patient comfort according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures 3.2 Prepare the materials and medicaments according to manufacturer's instructions for use and organisational procedures 3.3 Modify materials where indicated
4. Perform impression taking procedure	4.1 Position and prepare the patient according to organisational procedures 4.2 Instruct the patient on participation during the procedure 4.3 Introduce impression tray and mixed material in the patient's mouth 4.4 Complete muscle trimming 4.5 Monitor and reassure the patient throughout the procedure and provide first aid support if required according to organisational procedures 4.6 Remove the impression when set 4.7 Examine the patient's mouth for injury and impression material debris following removal of the impression 4.8 Restore the patient's comfort and appearance 4.9 Document details of the procedure according to organisational procedures 4.10 Assess the quality of the impression for the required prosthetic appliance

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Writing skills to:	document procedures
Reading skills to:	follow manufacturer's instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	confirm patient medical history; explain procedures
Numeracy skills to:	measure and prepare medicants

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has completed the following tasks:

- performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment
- prepared 4 different patients for impression procedures ensuring patient safety, including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ patients who are partially dentate ○ patients who are fully edentulous • taken at least 1 impression for each of the following types of procedures, using stock and custom trays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ relining or rebasing ○ complete dentures ○ partial dentures ○ removable flexible mouthguard used for sporting activities immediate dentures ○ additions or repairs to existing denture.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the effects of disability, medical conditions and medications on the impression taking procedure • physical and chemical properties of dental impression materials • principles of quality assurance and work effectiveness • rationale and objectives for taking impressions • rationale and criteria for selection and use of dental impression materials • ethical principles and legal responsibilities involved in the provision of dental care • dental practice or organisation policy and procedures, including registration standards and guidelines.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ gas burner ○ custom made impression tray ○ examination mirrors ○ existing dentures ○ mixing bowl and/or mixing pad ○ spatula ○ stock impression tray ○ storage container for transportation • AS5369 • Australian Dental Association guidelines for infection prevention and control

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) 2015/AQF mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEP004X Establish and record jaw relationships and select artificial teeth

Unit code	HLTEP004X	
Unit title <i>Mandatory field</i>	Establish and record jaw relationships and select artificial teeth	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP604D</p>
	Release 2	Major change to application. Minor changes to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to create and outline the form of dentures, record jaw relationships and select artificial teeth for dentate and edentulous patients.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector <i>Optional field</i>	DET	

Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare patient for procedure	1.1 Interpret laboratory work order 1.2 Provide details of the procedure to the patient or carer and confirm consent to follow treatment plan 1.3 Prepare personal protective equipment for the patient and members of the dental team according to organisational procedures
2. Select technique, equipment and materials for recordings	2.1 Select technique, equipment and materials for the procedure according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures 2.2 Prepare equipment and materials according to manufacturers' instructions and organisational procedures
3. Record jaw relationships and occlusion	3.1 Position the patient comfortably for the procedure 3.2 Instruct the patient on participation during the procedure 3.3 Ensure stability and comfort of registration rims 3.4 Observe centric and eccentric mandibular movements 3.5 Determine and record functional measurements and dimensions 3.6 Refer to Dentist if jaw relationship cannot be determined 3.7 Confirm recordings by observation and repetition 3.8 Maintain integrity of the recording during extra-oral transfer 3.9 Ensure the patient's wellbeing following procedure
4. Select appropriate artificial teeth	4.1 confirm adequacy of natural and artificial light for selection of colour and shade 4.2 Consult patient regarding aesthetic and functional requirements 4.3 Select artificial teeth in relation to wear and aesthetics according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational policies 4.4 Select artificial teeth for shade, size and shape according to manufacturer's instructions
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.</p> <p>Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p> <p><i><u>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</u></i></p>	

Skills	Description
Oral communication skills to:	instruct patients on procedures; consult patients on requirements; confirm patient wellbeing post procedure; interact with dental team
Reading skills to:	Interpret laboratory sheets; select artificial teeth; prepare equipment
Numeracy skills to:	Select artificial teeth;

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	
	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has completed the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment • followed procedures to ensure patient safety during procedures • customised the form of the registration rims prior to recording the jaw relationships and occlusions for at least 4 different patients including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4 dentures including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 2 complete maxillary and mandibular dentures ○ 2 partial dentures ○ complete maxillary or mandibular denture opposing partial maxillary or mandibular denture ○ opposing partial maxillary and mandibular dentures ○ partial maxillary or mandibular denture opposing natural dentition

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • established and recorded jaw relationships and occlusion for 4 different patients • selected appropriate shade and mould for artificial teeth for 4 different patients.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) policies • Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control guidelines • techniques for establishing and recording jaw relationships and occlusion • rationale and objectives for establishing and recording of jaw relationships and occlusion • legal and ethical issues including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ informed consent ○ duty of care ○ confidentiality ○ disability awareness • factors which influence selection of tooth shades such as skin tone, age, hair colour, natural teeth, light • dental practice or organisational procedures including registration standards and guidelines
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ dental clinic ○ de-identified dental and medical records and charts ○ personal protective equipment ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures.

	Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) 2015/AQF mandatory competency requirements for assessors.
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEP005X Evaluate a removable dental prosthesis at try-in stage

Unit code	HLTDEP005X	
Unit title	Evaluate a removable dental prosthesis at try-in stage	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP605D</p>
	Release 2	Major change to application. Major change to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to evaluate and modify the try-in fitting of a removable dental prosthesis prior to its completion for dentate or edentulous patients.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare patient for procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.1 Interpret laboratory work order 1.2 Prepare personal protective equipment for patient and dental team 1.3 Position patient for procedure 1.4 Provide full details of the procedure to patient or carer and confirm consent to follow treatment plan 1.5 Prepare equipment and materials according to manufacturers' instructions
2. Perform check of try-in prosthesis prior to insertion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2.1 Decontaminate the try-in prosthesis according to infection prevention and control guidelines 2.2 Remove potential injury-causing areas of the prosthesis prior to insertion 2.3 Check teeth and other components to ensure they will not dislodge during the procedure
3. Fit and evaluate try-in prosthesis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3.1 Position the patient comfortably for the procedure 3.2 Instruct patient on participation during the procedure 3.3 Examine the try-in prosthesis for retention and stability 3.4 Confirm accuracy of centric relation of the occlusal relationships of the try-in prosthesis 3.5 Assess patient comfort, aesthetic appearance of teeth and gums 3.6 Confirm that speech has not been affected 3.7 Complete documentation
4. Alter try-in prosthesis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4.1 Make changes to the prosthesis according to evaluation at the try-in stage 4.2 Repeat the evaluation of the try-in prosthesis 4.3 Ensure functional and aesthetic acceptability of the dentures to the operator 4.4 Confirm functional and aesthetic acceptability of the dentures to the patient 4.5 Provide patient with full details for the next stage of treatment 4.6 Complete documentation
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.</p>	

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Writing skills to:	complete documentation
Reading skills to:	follow manufacturer's instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with patients and dental team

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has completed the following tasks:

- performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment
- prepared at least 4 patients for dental prosthesis try-in
- followed procedures to ensure 4 patient's safety during try-in
- assessed functional and aesthetic acceptability of 4 trial sets of dentures, including:
 - 2 complete maxillary and mandibular dentures
 - and any 4 dentures from below including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 2 partial dentures including: ○ complete maxillary or mandibular denture opposing partial maxillary or mandibular denture ○ opposing partial maxillary and mandibular dentures ○ partial maxillary or mandibular denture opposing natural dentition.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • rationale and objectives for try-ins • functional and aesthetic acceptability of dentures, for both operators and patients • ethical principles and legal responsibilities involved in the provision of dental care • dental practice or organisation policy and procedures, including registration standards and guidelines.
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dental clinic • de-identified dental and medical records and charts • personal protective equipment • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



HLTDEP006X Insert and issue a completed removable dental prosthesis

Unit code	HLTDEP006X	
Unit title	Insert and issue a completed removable dental prosthesis	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites. 240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP606D</p>
	Release 2	Major change to application. Major change to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to insert, alter and issue a completed removable dental prosthesis for dentate and edentulous patients.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare patient for procedure	<p>1.1 Prepare personal protective equipment for the patient and dental team members according to organisational policies</p> <p>1.2 Position patient for procedure</p> <p>1.3 Provide details of the procedure and to the patient or carer and confirm consent to follow treatment plan</p> <p>1.4 Prepare equipment and materials according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
3. Fit and evaluate the prosthesis	<p>2.1 Decontaminate the completed removable dental prosthesis according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>2.2 Remove potential injury-causing areas of the prosthesis prior to insertion according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.3 Interpret advice from laboratory on fitting procedures and potential problems</p>
3. Fit and evaluate the prosthesis	<p>3.1 Instruct the patient on participation during fitting procedure according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.2 Confirm retention and stability of removable dental prosthesis</p> <p>3.3 Evaluate the fitting surfaces of the appliance have no sharp ridges or acrylic pearls according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.4 Assess denture for over-extensions according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.5 Confirm occlusal relationships are acceptable according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.6 Assess aesthetics and phonetics of removable dental prosthesis</p> <p>3.7 Assess patient comfort of removable dental prosthesis</p>
4. Alter prosthesis	<p>4.1 Complete alterations according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>4.2 Alter the fitting surface when pressure is indicated or when discrepancies to retention and stability are found</p> <p>4.3 Adjust occlusion of the prosthesis using occlusal indicator materials where required</p> <p>4.4 Complete documentation according to organisational policies</p>
5. Evaluate procedure and instruct the patient	<p>5.1 Discuss hygiene and maintenance instructions for the removable dental prosthesis and supporting structures with the patient or carer</p> <p>5.2 Advise follow up treatment to patient or carer</p> <p>5.3 Reach mutual agreement that all outcomes of the treatment have been fulfilled</p>

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Writing skills to:	complete documentation
Reading skills to:	follow manufacturer's instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with patients and dental team

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has completed the following tasks:

- performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment
- followed procedures to ensure the safety of 4 patients during preparation, insertion and removal of completed prosthesis
- assessed the functional and aesthetic acceptability for at least 4 patients including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 2 complete maxillary and mandibular dentures ○ and any 4 dentures from the following, 2 of which must be partial dentures : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ complete maxillary or mandibular denture opposing partial maxillary or mandibular denture ▪ opposing partial maxillary and mandibular dentures ▪ partial maxillary or mandibular denture opposing natural dentition • assessed the functional and aesthetic acceptability for at least one patient for one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ relines or rebases ○ repairs and/or additions to existing dentures.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively do the task outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) policies • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisational procedures • equipment and materials required to adjust and evaluate the fitting of removable dental prosthesis including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ aesthetics ○ phonics ○ comfort • ethical principles and legal responsibilities involved in the provision of dental care
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dental clinic ○ de-identified dental and medical records and charts for scenarios ○ personal protective equipment (PPE) • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>
<i>Mandatory fields are highlighted</i> <input type="checkbox"/>	

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEP007X Perform maintenance treatment for patient with removable dental prostheses

Unit code	HLTDEP007X	
Unit title	Perform maintenance treatment for patient with removable dental prostheses	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP607D</p>
	Release 2	Major change to application. Major change to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to adjust and maintain new and existing dental prostheses for dentate and edentulous patients.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Examine oral cavity and prosthesis to determine treatment need	1.1 Review the patient's medical history 1.2 Decontaminate the removable dental prosthesis according to infection prevention and control guidelines and manufacturer's instructions 1.3 Assess the patient's adaptation to prosthesis according to manufacturer's instructions 1.4 Determine the procedure that will give desired outcome for patient and the operator according to organisational procedures 1.5 Provide procedural information procedures with patient or carer to clarify preferences 1.6 Refer patient to other professionals according to organisational procedures
2. Prepare for the procedure	2.1 Provide information to patient or carer including options and potential risks and benefits according to organisational procedures 2.2 Obtain and document consent according to ethical and legal requirements 2.3 Select materials and equipment for the procedure according to organisational procedures
3. Perform procedure	3.1 Position the patient comfortably for the procedure according to organisational procedures 3.2 Explain participation required from the patient during the procedure using language that is easily understood 3.3 Carry out procedure according to treatment plan 3.4 Complete the procedure according to organisational procedures and manufacturer's instructions 3.5 Prepare materials according to manufacturer's instructions 3.6 Complete documentation according to organisational procedures
4. Evaluate procedure and instruct patient	4.1 Discuss oral hygiene and maintenance instructions of the removable dental prosthesis with patient or carer according to organisational procedures 4.2 Advise on follow up treatment required to patient or carer 4.3 Reach mutual agreement that all outcomes of the treatment have been fulfilled

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Writing skills to:	complete documentation
Reading skills to:	follow manufacturer's instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with patients and dental team

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has completed the following tasks:

- performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment
- prepared 4 patients for adjustment and maintenance of a range of new and existing dental prostheses
- followed procedures to ensure 4 patient's safety during adjustment and maintenance

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> assessed the functional and aesthetic acceptability of at least 4 different completed prostheses.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> conditions of the oral cavity related to ill-fitting removable dentures requiring treatment information for patients on available options for treatment of issues arising from ill-fitting removable dentures ethical principles and legal responsibilities involved in the provision of dental care dental practice or organisation policy and procedures, including registration standards and guidelines.
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace.</p> <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



FIRST DRAFT

HLTDEP008X Construct and insert an implant retained overdenture

Unit code	HLTDEP008X	
Unit title	Construct and insert an implant retained overdenture	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites. 240 work placement hours</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDP608C</p>
	Release 2	Major change to application. Major change to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence
Application <i>Mandatory field</i>	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct and place an aesthetic, and functional implant retained overdenture.</p> <p>This unit applies to work of dental prosthetists working in a clinical dental workplace who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	Health	
Unit sector	DET	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Plan treatment	<p>1.1 Establish structured professional relationship with dentist according to organisational policies</p> <p>1.2 Obtain legal records of the patient's personal, medical and dental history according to organisational policies</p> <p>1.3 Provide patient or carer with details of the procedure to the and obtain and document consent following ethical and legal requirements</p> <p>1.4 Confirm patient documentation and laboratory work order available in the clean zone of the surgery according to organisational policies</p> <p>1.5 Confirm emergency procedures are in place and ready for use according to organisational policies</p>
2. Take a primary impression	<p>2.1 Select equipment, instruments and materials for the primary impression according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational policies</p> <p>2.2 Complete primary impressions of the maxilla and/or mandible using an impression material in stock edentulous trays according to manufacturer's instructions and infection preventional and control guidelines</p> <p>2.3 Pour impression material in dental stone and trim for custom tray fabrication according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
3. Prepare to take a final impression	<p>3.1 Fabricate a custom tray with sufficient spacing over impression copings</p> <p>3.2 Attach static (non-screw) retained impression copings to the abutments</p> <p>3.3 Attach impression copings to the abutments</p> <p>3.4 Try-in the custom tray in the mouth and check for comfort and path of insertion with sufficient space between tray and impression coping</p>
4. Take the final impression	<p>4.1 Paint the custom tray with an appropriate adhesive for the impression material to be used according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational policies</p> <p>4.2 Mix the selected impression material and load material into custom tray according to the manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>4.3 Seat the impression tray over the impression copings according to manufacturer's instructions</p>

5. Pour master and/or working models and fabricate occlusal rims	<p>5.1 Seat replica analogues into impression copings according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>5.2 Pour master and/or working models</p> <p>5.3 Fabricate customised occlusal rims</p>
6. Record jaw relationships and occlusion	<p>6.1 Instruct the patient on participation during procedure according to organisational procedures</p> <p>6.2 Confirm stability and comfort of registration rims according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>6.3 Observe centric and eccentric mandibular movements</p> <p>6.4 Determine and record functional measurements and dimensions according to organisational procedures</p> <p>6.5 Consider referral if jaw relationship cannot be determined</p> <p>6.6 Confirm recordings by observation and repetition</p> <p>6.7 Maintain integrity of the recording during extra-oral transfer according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>6.8 Ensure the patient's wellbeing on completion of procedure</p>
7. Select appropriate artificial teeth	<p>7.1 Selection of colour and shade</p> <p>7.2 Consult patient regarding aesthetic and functional requirements</p> <p>7.3 Compare composition of artificial teeth in relation to wear and aesthetics according to organisational procedures</p> <p>7.4 Examine manufacturer's mould and shade guides according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>7.5 Select artificial teeth in appropriate in shade, size and shape according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p>
8. Fit and evaluate try-in prosthesis	<p>8.1 Instruct the patient on participation during the procedure</p> <p>8.2 Confirm retention and stability of try-in prosthesis</p> <p>8.3 Examine the occlusal relationships of the try-in prosthesis for accuracy of centric relation according to manufacturer's instructions for use and organisational procedures</p> <p>8.4 Assess the aesthetic appearance of teeth and gums according to manufacturer's instructions for use and organisational procedures</p> <p>8.5 Confirm speech has not been affected</p> <p>8.6 Confirm patient comfort</p> <p>8.7 Complete documentation as required according to organisational procedures</p>
9. Process, evaluate and insert the completed overdenture	<p>9.1 Position the patient comfortably for the procedure</p>

	<p>9.2 Instruct the patient on participation during the procedure</p> <p>9.3 Examine the prosthesis for retention and stability</p> <p>9.4 Check the fitting surfaces of the appliance and ensure there are no sharp ridges or acrylic pearls</p> <p>9.5 Place denture in the mouth and assess that no over-extensions occur along the periphery of the dentures</p> <p>9.6 Seat denture onto overdenture abutments</p> <p>9.7 Confirm the occlusal relationships are acceptable</p> <p>9.8 Assess aesthetics of removable dental prosthesis</p> <p>9.9 Assess phonetics of removable dental prosthesis</p> <p>9.10 Assess patient comfort of removable dental prosthesis.</p> <p>9.11 Provide instructions on the insertion and removal, hygiene and ongoing maintenance of the prosthesis and abutments</p> <p>9.12 Ensure the dentist in the structured professional relationship is informed of completed final prosthesis</p>
--	--

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Writing skills to:	complete documentation
Reading skills to:	follow manufacturer’s instructions and infection prevention and control guidelines
Learning skills to:	apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with patients and dental team

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• performed the activities outlined in the performance criteria of this unit during a period of at least 240 hours of work in a clinical dental workplace environment• prepared 2 patients for insertion of an implant retained overdenture• followed procedures to ensure patient safety during try-in and insertion• constructed 2 functional and aesthetic implant retained overdentures.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage the task and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Australian Standards• workplace health and safety (WHS) policies• Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control• Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation• organisational procedures• dental practice or organisation policy and procedures, including registration standards and guidelines• advantages of an implant retained overdenture to the patient including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ aesthetics especially when resorption has decreased the size of the alveolar process in the maxilla○ fewer implants, abutments and prosthetic components○ less component stress and breakage○ lower treatment costs compared to fixed prosthetics○ simplified construction technique

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the specific skills and techniques that are required when processing implant overdentures for a successful outcome • disadvantages of implant retained overdentures including the wear of attachments with repeated removal and seating of the overdentures • properties of dental materials used for construction • implant attachment options for overdentures • importance for patients to follow pre and post-procedural instructions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ removal of the overdenture ○ use of a standard soft toothbrush to brush abutments ○ use of dental floss to clean under the bar and around each abutment cylinder ○ use of an interdental brush to clean the under surface of the denture and the overdenture framework ○ instructions on the insertion and removal, hygiene and ongoing maintenance of the prosthesis and abutments.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the dental workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dental clinic/laboratory ○ de-identified dental and medical records and charts for scenarios ○ personal protective equipment ○ Australia Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ modelling of industry operating conditions including access to real people for simulations and scenarios of prosthetic procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) 2015/AQTF mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p><i>No equivalent unit.</i></p>

Mandatory fields are highlighted



HLTDET001X Construct models

Unit code	HLTDET001X	
Unit title	Construct models	
Unit mapping information	Supersedes HLTDT301D	
Modification history	Release	Comment
	1	<i>This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites</i>
	2.	Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct accurate dental models from impressions of a patient's maxillary and mandibular arches for use in laboratory procedures and prosthesis fabrication.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and</p>	

	<p>take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DET
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Verify integrity of impressions	<p>1.1 Handle dental materials according to infection prevention and control guidelines and organisational procedures</p> <p>1.2 Decontaminate impressions according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>1.3 Examine impressions for defects</p> <p>1.4 Confirm impressions meet the specifications of the laboratory work order</p> <p>1.5 Handle impressions to avoid damage or distortion according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p>

	<p>1.6 Ensure accompanying models are intact with no defects according to organisational procedures</p> <p>1.7 Prepare a range of impressions for pouring according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
2. Select and prepare model materials	<p>2.1 Select model materials according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.2 confirm cleanliness of mixing equipment according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.3 Prepare model materials according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.4 Maintain and store model materials in according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
3. Pour impressions	<p>3.1 Pour model materials into impressions according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.2 Confirm required setting time according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
4. Finish model	<p>4.1 Separate intact model from the impression</p> <p>4.2 Inspect the model for defects according to organisational procedures</p> <p>4.3 Trim the model according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>4.4 Duplicate the master model to create a working model where required by laboratory work order</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	Interpret laboratory work order, infection prevention and control guidelines and manufacturer's instructions.
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	label container for dispatch.

<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	explain procedures or outcomes to colleagues or supervisors; confirming requirements of laboratory work order; seeking clarification where necessary.
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	confirm setting times.
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	apply new techniques, following updated infection prevention and control guidelines.

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • used standard precautions and safe work practices to prepare models, using a range of materials specifically prepared against written instructions and manufacturers' instructions, for at least 4 different types of impressions (must be a combination of maxillary and mandibular arches): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentate ○ partially dentate ○ edentulous • critically evaluated the 4 different types of models produced to meet technical laboratory and clinician requirements
Knowledge evidence <i>Mandatory field</i>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures

- Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control
- Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation
- requirements and organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work including:
 - use of standard precautions to minimise risk
 - use of personal protective equipment (PPE) including disposable gloves, laboratory coat and eye protection
 - decontamination of impressions
 - minimising hazardous manual tasks
 - requirements for storage of model material
 - safe disposal of packaging materials
- fundamental oral anatomy, including:
 - dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth
 - structures of the oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth
 - teeth form and function
- properties of elastic impression materials including:
 - alginate impression material
 - polyether impression material
 - polysulphide impression material
 - polyvinyl siloxane impression material
- properties of rigid impression materials including:
 - impression compound
 - zinc oxide-eugenol impression pastes
- desirable properties of model materials including:
 - accurate reproduction of all details of the impression
 - colour contrast with other materials used on them

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ ease of manipulation ○ sufficient strength and hardness ○ suitability for use with all types of impression materials ● significance of study models for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentate and partially dentate mouths ○ edentulous mouths.
<p>Assessment conditions <i>Mandatory field</i></p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ access to work order ○ Dental Board of Australia guidelines on infection control on which the candidate bases the planning process ○ impression materials ○ laboratory safety manuals and procedures in line with relevant Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ personal protective equipment (PPE) ○ simulation models on which to construct impression models ○ WHS policies on which the candidate bases the planning process. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

HLTDET002X Construct custom impression trays

Unit code	HLTDET002X	
Unit title	Construct custom impression trays	
Unit mapping information	Supersedes HLTDT302D	
Modification history	Release	Comments
	1	<p>This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites</p>
	2	<p>This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites</p>

<p>Application</p>	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct special trays to accurately record oral tissues.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
<p>Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements</p>	<p>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</p>
<p>Pre-requisite unit</p>	<p>Nil</p>
<p>Competency field</p>	<p>DET</p>
<p>Unit sector</p>	<p>Health</p>
<p>Elements</p>	<p>Performance Criteria</p>
<p>Elements describe the essential outcomes</p>	<p>Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.</p>
<p>1. Prepare model</p>	<p>1.1 Interpret the laboratory work order 1.2 Block out undesirable undercuts 1.3 Design the custom tray for patient's dentition and intended impression material and technique</p>

	1.4 Apply spacer material according to manufacturer's instructions
2. Select and prepare materials	2.1 Select custom tray materials according to the laboratory work order 2.2 Prepare equipment for processing according to organisational procedures 2.3 Select mixing vessels and templates according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures
3. Construct custom impression tray	3.1 Apply separating medium according to manufacturer's instructions 3.2 Mix and manipulate materials according to manufacturer's instructions 3.3 Adapt tray material to the model to the pre-determined peripheral outline 3.4 Construct handle and attach according to manufacturer's instructions 3.5 Process custom tray according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures 3.6 Separate tray from the model and remove spacer material according to manufacturer's instructions 3.7 Trim outline of tray to shape according to manufacturer's instructions
4. Finish custom impression tray	4.1 Smooth and refine the peripheries, handle and other surfaces of the tray 4.2 Decontaminate the custom impression tray according to infection prevention and control guidelines 4.3 Dry the custom tray and place in a sealed container for dispatch
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p>	
<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>

<i>Reading skills to:</i>	interpret laboratory work order technical specifications, infection prevention and control guidelines, and manufacturer instructions.
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	label container for dispatch.
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	explain procedures or outcomes to colleagues or supervisors; confirming requirements of laboratory work order; seeking clarification where necessary.
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	measure rim dimensions.
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	apply new techniques, following updated infection prevention and control guidelines.

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpreted 4 laboratory work order • used standard precautions and safe work practices to fabricate 4 different custom trays including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ used a range of materials ○ different dentitions ○ desirable properties and design features ○ including one each of the following (must be a combination of maxillary and mandibular arches): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ full dentition ▪ edentulous ○ partial dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ bounded saddle
-----------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ free end saddle • critically evaluated the 4 custom impression trays produced to meet technical laboratory and clinician requirements.
Knowledge evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ arrangement of the teeth ▪ naming of teeth ▪ coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ hard and soft palate ▪ lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity ▪ tongue ▪ floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function • properties of custom tray materials including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ acrylic resins ○ light-cured composite • rationale for using space filling materials • desirable properties and design features of custom impression trays including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a design that holds the impression material in the correct position in the mouth

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ a design that supports the lips and cheeks so that the functional depth and shape of the sulcus is recorded ○ a design that allows for positioning of the handle to avoid the lip during impression taking ○ rigidity, strength, dimensional stability and smoothness ○ spacing to permit the correct thickness of the impression material to be used.
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: ○ access to laboratory work orders ○ Australia Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety manuals and procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

HLTDET003X Construct registration rims

Unit code	HLTDET003X	
Unit title	Construct registration rims	
Unit mapping information	Supersedes HLTDT303D	
Modification history	Release	Comments
	1	This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites
	2	<i>Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.</i>
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct registration rims for removable prostheses to support the recording of maxillomandibular relationships and prosthesis planning.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and</p>	

	<p>take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DET
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Select and prepare materials	<p>1.1 Interpret the laboratory work order</p> <p>1.2 Select materials for base and rim according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>1.3 Prepare model to enable application of selected base material according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
2. Construct base	<p>2.1 Apply base material to model</p> <p>2.2 Process base material according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.3 Trim base material to peripheral contours of model and appropriate landmarks according to organisational procedures</p>

3. Construct registration rim	<p>3.1 Construct rim according to standard and manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.2 Trim rim to prescribed dimensions and landmarks according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.3 Smooth and polish rim according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.4 Decontaminate the registration rim according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>3.5 Dry the registration rim and place in a sealed container for dispatch</p>
-------------------------------	--

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading</i>	interpret laboratory work order, technical specifications, infection control guidelines, and manufacturer instructions.
<i>Writing</i>	label container for dispatch.
<i>Oral communication</i>	explain procedures or outcomes to colleagues or supervisors; confirming requirements of laboratory work order; seeking clarification where necessary.
<i>Numeracy</i>	measure rim dimensions.
<i>Learning</i>	apply new techniques, following updated infection prevention and control guidelines.

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence

The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- interpreted 4 laboratory work orders

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • used standard precautions and safe work practices to fabricate maxillary and mandibular registration rims using a range of flexible and rigid base and rim material for the following dentitions (4 rims in total): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ partial with a combination of bounded and unbounded saddle areas ○ edentulous • critically evaluated the 4 registration rims produced to meet technical laboratory and clinician requirements.
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ arrangement of teeth ▪ naming of teeth ▪ coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ hard and soft palate ▪ lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity ▪ tongue ▪ floor of mouth ○ teeth form and function

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • properties of materials used to construct registration rims, including rigid and flexible bases.
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ access to laboratory work orders ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety manuals and procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ materials for construction of rims ○ work health and safety (WHS) procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

HLTDET004X Articulate models and transfer records

Unit code	HLTDET004X	
Unit title	Articulate models and transfer records	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites
	Release 2	Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.
Application <i>Mandatory field</i>	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to transfer oral records and mount models on an articulator'</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	

<p>1. Select and prepare the articulator</p>	<p>1.1 Handle dental materials according to infection prevention and control guidelines and manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>1.2 Decontaminate occlusal registration rims according to infection control guidelines</p> <p>1.3 Confirm requirements of laboratory work order</p> <p>1.4 Select and adjust articulator according to laboratory work order</p> <p>1.5 Confirm all adjustable settings of the articulator are set to their neutral or zero settings</p> <p>1.6 Identify the mounting method</p>
<p>2. Select and prepare materials</p>	<p>2.1 Position models and oral records in articulator for a range of prosthetic appliances</p> <p>2.2 Prepare mounting materials and apply to models according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.3 Establish secure centric records</p> <p>2.4 Remove excess material and smooth to produce a neat finish according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.5 Clean equipment according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p>
<p>3. Transfer oral records to articulator</p>	<p>3.1 Transpose records according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.2 Record midline</p> <p>3.3 Set and record vertical height</p> <p>3.4 Set the condylar angles according to the laboratory work order</p>

Foundation skills

This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.

Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret laboratory work orders, infection control guidelines, and manufacturer instructions

Writing skills to:	Record midline
Oral communication skills to:	interact with colleagues
Numeracy skills to:	Confirm adjustable settings and set vertical heights
Learning skills to:	following updated infection prevention and control guidelines

Where all foundation skills essential to performance in this unit are explicit in the performance criteria insert:

Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency.

Range of conditions

Optional field

Specifies different work environments and conditions that may affect performance. Essential operating conditions that may be present (depending on the work situation, needs of the candidate, accessibility of the item, and local industry and regional contexts) are included.

Range is restricted to essential operating conditions and any other variables essential to the work environment.

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- used infection prevention and control guidelines and safe work practices to mount at least one of each of the following types of articulators with attached registrations rims:
 - planeline articulator
 - adjustable articulator with face/ear bow

critically evaluated both types of articulations produced to meet laboratory work order and clinician requirements

Knowledge Evidence

The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage

	<p>contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ structures of the oral cavity including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ hard and soft palate ▪ lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity ▪ tongue ▪ floor of the mouth ▪ teeth form and function • dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ arrangement of the teeth ○ naming of teeth ○ coding of teeth • articulation procedures • mechanical devices including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ articulators ○ face-bows • recording techniques and devices • relevant material science for carrying out procedures
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p> <p>https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDET005X Construct thermoformed bases and appliances

Unit code	HLTDET005X	
Unit title	Construct thermoformed bases and appliances	
Unit mapping information	Supersedes HLTDT315D	
Modification history	Release	Comments
	1	<i>This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites</i>
	2	<i>Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.</i>
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills and knowledge required to construct thermoformed dental bases and appliances, including mouthguards, bleaching trays, and orthodontic retainers, using thermoforming techniques and associated laboratory processes.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and</p>	

	<p>take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DET
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare model	1.1 Interpret laboratory work order 1.2 Mark outline and scribe finishing lines 1.3 Apply block-out material
2. Thermo-form appliance or base from blank	2.1 Select thermo-forming material according to laboratory work order and manufacturer's instructions 2.2 Select thermo-forming equipment according to manufacturer's instructions 2.3 Apply heat to material to ensure that blank has been uniformly softened according to organisational procedures 2.4 Adapt softened material to model ensuring adaptation is uniform with constant thickness according to manufacturer's instructions

	<p>2.5 Allow material to cool</p> <p>2.6 Verify adaptation</p>
3. Trim, shape and finish appliances or bases	<p>3.1 Remove thermo-formed blank</p> <p>3.2 Trim to outline and fit to model</p> <p>3.3 Refine outline</p> <p>3.4 Smooth and finish appliance or base</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p><i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i></p>	
Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret laboratory work order, technical specifications, infection control guidelines, and manufacturer instructions
Writing skills to:	mark outline and scribe finishing lines
Learning skills to:	apply new techniques, following updated infection prevention and control guidelines
Oral communication skills to:	interact with colleagues
Numeracy skills to:	Apply heat to thermoformed bases
<p>Assessment requirements</p>	
Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read and correctly interpreted work orders and constructed the following 3 appliances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ mouthguard ○ bleaching tray ○ splint

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • used standard precautions and safe work practices to trim, polish and finish 2 thermoformed appliances suitable for insertion in the mouth • critically evaluated 2 different types of thermoformed appliances produced to meet technical laboratory and clinician requirements
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369:2023 • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ articulation and occlusion ○ dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ arrangement of the teeth ▪ naming of teeth ▪ coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ hard and soft palate ▪ lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity ▪ tongue ▪ floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function • polymer science • relevant material science for carrying out procedures • thermoforming technology

<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369:2023 ○ access to work orders ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety manuals ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ work health and safety (WHS) procedures <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

HLTDET006X Construct immediate dentures

Unit code	HLTDET006X	
Unit title	Construct immediate dentures	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	Major changes to unit application. Major changes to performance criteris, performance evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills and knowledge required to construct complete and partial immediate replacement dentures and surgical templates according to prescribed specifications, infection control requirements and organisational procedures.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p> <p>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</p>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	
1. Arrange artificial teeth	1.1 Determine requirements for prosthesis according to laboratory work order 1.2 Select appropriate articifical teeth according to patient requirements and laboratory work order	

	<p>1.3 Assess anatomical features relevant to the partial edentulous case and communication implications according to laboratory work order</p> <p>1.4 Arrange teeth for partial edentulous according to laboratory work order</p>
<p>2. Arrange artificial teeth and construct surgical template for finish</p>	<p>2.1 Maintain anatomical and functional integrity when determining method of removing teeth and preparing ridge according to laboratory work order manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.2 Confirm continuity with each modification of model according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.3 Evaluate and adjust existing artificial teeth as required before removing model teeth to maintain occlusal and spatial relationships</p> <p>2.4 Shape and refine wax surfaces to accurately reflect anatomical contours and functional requirements</p> <p>2.5 Confirm model integrity and readiness for further processing when investing, keying, and removing wax according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.6 Support prosthesis design and surgical requirements to finalise ridge gap according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.7 Duplicate the working model to facilitate construction of a surgical template according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.8 Design and construct a surgical template based on laboratory work order specifications and clinical considerations</p>
<p>3. Process immediate dentures and surgical templates</p>	<p>3.1 Evaluate the immediate surgical template against the laboratory work order and organisational procedures, making informed decisions to ensure suitability for clinical use</p> <p>3.2 Assess and refine immediate dentures to achieve the required finish and functional outcomes, according to laboratory work order and patient considerations</p> <p>3.3 Confirm denture is fit for purpose according to laboratory work order, organisational procedures and patient requirements.</p> <p>3.4 Decontaminate dentures and surgical templates according to laboratory work order manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>3.5 Critically evaluate and determine appropriate corrective actions according to Standards, laboratory work order manufacturer's instructions and patient requirements</p>

	<p>3.6 Document outcomes and corrective actions according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.6 Determine storage for dentures and surgical templates to maintain moisture according to infection prevention and control standards</p>
--	--

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Numeracy skills to:	measure ridge dimensions, teeth positions, and wax contours; calculating material quantities for investments, keying, and duplication processes.
Learning skills to:	apply new techniques, following updated infection prevention and control guidelines, and adapting procedures to different patient or model scenarios.
Reading skills to:	interpret laboratory work orders, technical specifications, infection control guidelines, and manufacturer instructions for artificial teeth and dental materials.
Writing skills to:	Record procedural steps, adjustments, and outcomes; labeling models, dentures, and surgical templates correctly.
Oral communication skills to:	explain procedures or outcomes to colleagues or supervisors; confirming requirements of work orders; seeking clarification where necessary.
Problem solving skills to:	sequence tasks logically (e.g., removing model teeth, arranging artificial teeth), adjusting teeth or wax to meet specifications, resolving issues in denture fit or template construction.

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:
-----------------------------	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • followed organisational procedures, manufacturers' instructions, standard precautions and safe work practices to prepare materials used in immediate dentures • construct one maxillary and one mandibular denture • construct one maxillary or mandibular denture opposing dentate dentition • construct one partial maxillary and mandibular denture including anterior tooth • critically evaluated one immediate denture produced to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in context of the work role. This includes the knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 and its impact on immediate dentures • work health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisation procedures relating to dental laboratory work • advantages of immediate dentures for the patient including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ accurate positioning of the artificial teeth ○ control of post-extraction haemorrhage ○ correct restoration of the vertical and horizontal relationships between maxilla and mandible ○ maintenance of appearance • oral anatomy, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth ○ structures of oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function • clinical treatment procedures necessary to prepare the patient for immediate denture insertion, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ where there are posterior teeth and no existing partial denture ○ where a partial denture is present • disadvantages of immediate dentures for the patient including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the implications for the patient where the appearance of anterior artificial teeth cannot be approved at try-in ○ the implications of rapid bone resorption following extraction ● types of immediate replacement dentures and their advantages or disadvantages: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ flanged denture without bone re-contouring ○ flanged denture with bone re-contouring ○ open-face denture.
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines for infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety procedures ○ work health and safety (WHS) procedures <p><u>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</u></p>
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Links	Link to Companion Volume Implementation Guide.

HLTDET007X Construct removable acrylic partial dentures

Unit code	HLTDET007X	
Unit title	Construct removable acrylic partial dentures	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	Major change to unit application and performance evidence. Minor changes to performance criteria and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to construct removable acrylic partial dentures according to prescribed specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention and control procedures.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	
1. Design acrylic removable partial denture	1.1 Interpret laboratory work order and identify patient-specific requirements for removable acrylic partial dentures 1.2 Analyse model and survey to determine how it influences denture design	

	<p>1.3 Review denture design and determine how it should be represented on the master model</p> <p>1.4 Identify and assess undercuts on the mode, block out undesirable undercuts and plan strategies for retention and support proper fit and function</p> <p>1.5 Evaluate and mark position of food lines</p> <p>1.6 Duplicate the master model to produce working model for denture construction according to laboratory work order</p>
2. Select and prepare materials	<p>2.1 Interpret patient requirements to select materials that meet functional, aesthetic, and work health and safety (WHS) considerations</p> <p>2.2 Assess shape and dimensions of component parts and determine how they will meet case specifications</p>
3. Arrange artificial teeth	<p>3.1 Evaluate patient requirements to select and position teeth in wax that meet aesthetics and functional requirements</p> <p>3.2 Assess wax contours to support proper fit and prosthesis function</p> <p>3.3 Decontamination of the try-in denture according to infection prevention and control principles</p>
4. Construct retainer units	<p>4.1 Analyse laboratory s work order to construct retainer components that meet aesthetics and functional requirements</p> <p>4.2 Join components to form a complete unit according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>4.3 Assess positioning of teeth and retainer components in wax to maintain correct relationships</p> <p>4.4 Evaluate the shape of facial and lingual surfaces to support function and appearance</p> <p>4.5 Plan how the appliance should be prepared and secured for processing</p>
5. Select and prepare materials and processing technique	<p>5.1 Identify the appropriate polymer system for the case and explain why it is suitable</p> <p>5.2 Determine and apply investment technique for the selected materials</p> <p>5.3 Select processing cycle for the prosthesis according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>5.4 Select polymeric material for prosthesis construction based on case requirements</p>

	<p>5.5 Prepare system components for processing according to manufacturer instructions</p> <p>5.6 Assess materials application stages to determine readiness for application</p>
6. Process model	<p>6.1 Apply investment techniques to support prosthesis processing</p> <p>6.2 Apply material placement in the investment mould to maintain shape and function</p> <p>6.3 Monitor processing of polymeric material for time and temperature according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>6.4 Evaluate prosthesis after processing, identify and correct irregularities</p> <p>6.5 Review accuracy and fit of retainer units according to patient requirements</p>
7. Finish denture or appliance	<p>7.1 Evaluate articulated prosthesis to confirm appropriate occlusion and articulation</p> <p>7.2 Examine occlusal vertical dimension and determine adjustments required to maintain function.</p> <p>7.3 Assess surfaces of prosthesis to verify smoothness and quality finish.</p> <p>7.4 Evaluate fit, function, and appearance of finished prosthesis against case requirements.</p> <p>7.5 Identify and determine corrective actions</p> <p>7.5 Handle prosthesis according to infection prevention and control principles</p> <p>7.6 Decontaminate prosthesis according to infection prevention and control principles</p> <p>7.7 Prepare finished prosthesis for storage or dispatch to maintain integrity and hygiene.</p> <p>7.8 Document outcomes</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret laboratory work order, manufacturer instructions, technical specifications, survey results, and infection prevention guidelines. This

	supports material selection, denture design, and processing accuracy.
Learning skills to:	apply new techniques or updated infection control guidelines; adapt procedures to suit different prosthetic cases or specifications.
Writing skills to:	record details of materials, polymer systems, adjustments, and finishing outcomes; label models, dentures correctly.
Oral communication skills to:	communicate design decisions, clarifications, or adjustments with operators, colleagues, or supervisors; confirm laboratory's work order details and technical requirements.
Problem solving skills to:	sequence tasks logically (e.g., analyse, survey → design → duplicate, arrange teeth → construct retainers → wax up, invest, process → finish), resolve irregularities in processing, and adjust dentures or appliances for fit and function.
Numeracy skills to:	measure ridge dimensions, teeth positions, wax contours, and component dimensions; calculate quantities of materials and processing times.
Assessment Requirements	
Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpreted 2 laboratory work orders to construct 2 removable acrylic partial dentures • constructed 2 acrylic partial dentures, for each partial denture. For each denture, there is evidence the candidate has: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ followed standard precautions ○ followed safe work practices ○ combined bounded and free end saddle areas suitable for insertion into the mouth • evaluated one acrylic partial denture produced to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements.
Knowledge Evidence	The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and

performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes the knowledge of:

- Australian Standard AS5369:2023 and its impact on acrylic partial denture
- organisational health and safety (WHS) procedures
- Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control
- standard precautions
- Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation
- organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work
- advantages and disadvantages of partial dentures
- oral anatomy, including:
 - dentition including:
 - arrangement of the teeth
 - naming and coding of teeth
 - structures of the oral cavity, including:
 - hard and soft palate
 - lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity
 - tongue and floor of the mouth
 - teeth form and function
- fundamentals of dental polymers including:
 - acrylic and modified acrylic prosthetic teeth
 - acrylic plastics as soft liners
 - acrylic plastics for denture bases including composition and properties
 - acrylic-metal combinations
 - modified acrylic denture base plastics including manipulation and processing
 - the polymerisation process including cross-linked polymers, copolymers, modified polymers and vinyl plastics
- principles of partial denture design
- surveying techniques
- stages in design of partial dentures:
 - classifying, supporting and outlining saddles
 - connecting the various components together
 - providing additional components to resist rotation
 - providing reciprocation and bracing
 - providing retention
 - reviewing the design for hygiene, support and retention.

Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369:2023 ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines for infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety procedures ○ WHS procedures <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
Unit mapping information	<p>No equivalent unit.</p>
Links	<p>Link to companion volume implementation guide</p>

HLTDET008X Construct cast alloy removable partial denture framework

Unit code	HLTDET008X	
Unit title	Construct cast alloy removable partial denture framework	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements.</p> <p>Removal of pre-requisites</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDT509D</p>
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to construct burnout patterns for cast metal frameworks and to invest, trim, treat, finish, and evaluate alloy structures according to prescribed specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention and control procedures.</p> <p>It applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare master model	<p>1.1 Analyse laboratory work order to determine model specifications and requirements</p> <p>1.2 Review model survey performed by operator and assess its impact on denture design</p> <p>1.3 Apply the denture design to master model and align with laboratory work order requirements</p> <p>1.4 Identify and manage undesirable undercuts by blocking out to support framework construction</p> <p>1.5 Evaluate design and create clasp ledges to meet functional requirements</p> <p>1.6 Determine placement of food lines to guide prosthesis positioning</p> <p>1.7 Assess areas requiring tissue relief to accommodate oral structures</p> <p>1.8 Plan and apply saddle relief according to design specifications to support comfort and function</p>
2. Construct refractory model	<p>2.1 Determine how to duplicate the master model using suitable refractory material to meet case requirements</p> <p>2.2 Evaluate the design specifications to plan and construct the sprue former if required</p> <p>2.3 Assess the refractory model and apply hardeners or sealants to ensure it will maintain integrity during casting</p>
3. Wax and invest removable partial denture framework	<p>3.1 Apply design outline to the refractory model accurately, ensuring alignment with case requirements</p> <p>3.2 Select wax and pre-formed components to meet the design specifications and functional needs</p> <p>3.3 Build up wax patterns on the refractory model consistent with the intended design</p> <p>3.4 Plan and position sprues verify proper flow of alloy during casting, considering size, shape, and attachment to the investment former</p> <p>3.5 Determine appropriate investment material and technique based on alloy type and manufacturer's guidance</p> <p>3.6 Prepare and mix investment materials to achieve optimal consistency and setting properties</p> <p>3.7 Treat wax patterns and sprues to promote successful casting outcomes</p> <p>3.8 Evaluate investment and allow it to set for the prescribed time to ensure durability and accuracy</p>
4. Burnout and cast removable partial denture framework	<p>4.1 Analyse laboratory's work order to select alloy suitable for the case requirements</p> <p>4.2 Determine burnout and preheat cycles to match combination of investment material and alloy</p>

	<p>4.3 Position investment mould and manage temperature to ensure effective wax elimination and casting readiness</p> <p>4.4 Plan and conduct melting and casting of the alloy using materials, equipment, and techniques according to design and functional requirements</p>
<p>5. Devest, trim, finish and evaluate alloy structures</p>	<p>5.1 Determine the appropriate cooling cycle for the cast alloy based on manufacturer’s guidance and case requirements</p> <p>5.2 Remove cast alloy structure from the investment without compromising its integrity</p> <p>5.3 Assess and treat surface of cast to remove oxides and ensure readiness for finishing</p> <p>5.4 Examine the cast alloy structure and identify any casting faults to confirm its viability for use</p> <p>5.5 Remove sprues, plan and carry out trimming and shaping to meet design, functional specifications and patient requirements</p> <p>5.6 Treat alloy surface to enhance durability, aesthetics, using appropriate materials and equipment</p> <p>5.7 Position cast on master model to evaluate accuracy of major connections and clasps and adjust metal occlusal contacts as required</p> <p>5.8 Apply infection prevention and control principles to clean and decontaminate the framework</p> <p>5.9 Critically evaluate denture against the laboratory work order, technical standards and patient requirements and identify discrepancies, determine appropriate corrective actions, and document outcomes</p> <p>5.10 Prepare framework for storage or dispatch, ensuring it is dry, correctly positioned, and protected</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p><i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i></p>	
<p>Skills</p>	<p>Description</p>
<p>Reading skills to:</p>	<p>interpret laboratory work order, technical specifications, survey results, alloy instructions, and manufacturer procedures for materials, burnout, casting, trimming, and finishing.</p>
<p>Writing skills to:</p>	<p>record work outcomes, adjustments, and deviations; label master models, refractory models, and finished frameworks accurately; maintain logs for quality assurance.</p>

Oral communication skills to:	communicate with operators, colleagues, and supervisors to confirm design, alloy selection, processing cycles, and adjustments.
Numeracy skills to:	measure model dimensions, sprue sizes, wax thickness, and occlusal contacts; calculate material volumes, alloy quantities, and processing times.
Learning skills to:	apply new techniques, adapt to different alloys or frameworks, and implement updated manufacturer or organisational procedures.

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • interpreted 2 laboratory work order to construct 2 cast alloy removable partial dentures • constructed 2 cast alloy removable partial dentures. For each denture, there is evidence the candidate has: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ followed standard precautions ○ followed safe work practices ○ prepared materials used in casts for removable alloy partial denture ○ combined bounded and free ended saddles • critically evaluated one cast for removable alloy partial denture procedures to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete the skills outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes the knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369:2023 • organisational health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work • oral anatomy including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ hard and soft palate ▪ lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity ▪ tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function ● dental alloys ● heat treatment ● melting and casting ● relevant material science for carrying out procedures ● solidification ● surface finishing ● cast alloy denture components.
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ WHS procedures <p><u>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</u></p>
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Links	Link to companion volume implementation guide

HLTDET009X Construct crown and bridge structures

Unit code	HLTDET009X	
Unit title	Construct crown and bridge structures	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Merged <u>HLTDT510C/HLTDT516C</u> Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisite
	Release 2	
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to construct crown and bridge structures, including inlays, veneers, and substructures, according to prescribed design specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention and control procedures.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with current Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australia standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare crown and bridge model	1.1 Select and use an appropriate model system to produce the crown and bridge model according to case requirements 1.2 Assess and adjust the model to achieve correct height and alignment with the occlusal plane 1.3 Evaluate model and section it according to laboratory work order specifications 1.4 Determine and prepare dyes to support accurate restoration construction
2. Wax and invest fixed partial dentures and structures	2.1 Analyse the design specifications to build wax patterns for crown and bridge restorations 2.2 Plan and position sprues on wax patterns to ensure accurate casting outcomes 2.3 Select investment material appropriate for the chosen alloy or restorative material 2.4 Prepare investment materials to achieve the correct consistency and properties for casting 2.5 Evaluate investment of wax patterns to ensure stability, accuracy, and readiness for casting
3. Burnout, process and finish fixed partial dentures and structures	3.1 Determine appropriate burnout techniques based on the investment and restorative material 3.2 Apply selected processing method using materials and equipment suitable for the restoration or substructure 3.3 Evaluate removal of restoration or substructure from the investment to avoid damage 3.4 Inspect restoration to identify defects and verify quality standards 3.5 Complete trimming and finishing while maintaining contact areas and margins 3.6 Assess finished restoration for fit, function, and aesthetics against case requirements 3.7 Apply infection prevention and control procedures to clean and decontaminate the restoration 3.8 Critically evaluate at least one maxillary or mandibular anterior and posterior crown structure against the laboratory work order , technical standards and patient requirements and identify discrepancies, determine appropriate corrective actions, and document outcomes 3.9 Prepare finished casting for storage or dispatch, ensuring it is dry, positioned correctly, and protected

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret laboratory s work orders , design specifications, investment and restorative material instructions, and infection prevention procedures.
Learning skills to:	apply new techniques, adapt to different alloys or restorative materials, and implement updated manufacturer or organisational procedures.
Writing skills to:	record restoration details, adjustments, material use, and processing outcomes; label models, restorations, and containers accurately.
Numeracy skills to:	measure model dimensions, die preparations, wax patterns, casting sizes, and occlusal contacts; calculate volumes, quantities, and processing times.
Oral communication skills to:	communicate with operators, colleagues, or supervisors to confirm design, material selection, and processing parameters.

Assessment Requirements**Performance Evidence**

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- Interpreted 2 laboratory **work orders** to design and construct 2 crown and bridge structures
- designed and constructed 2 maxillary or mandibular anterior and posterior crowns. For each, there is evidence the candidate has:
 - followed standard precautions
 - followed safe work practices

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> critically evaluated at least one maxillary or mandibular anterior and posterior crown produced to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Australian Standard AS5369 organisational health and safety (WHS) procedures Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control Commonwealth State/Territory legislation organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> arrangement of teeth, naming and coding of teeth structures of the oral cavity related to crown and bridge structures teeth form and function tooth preparation including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> basic cementation techniques of restorations articulation and occlusion casting dental metallurgy factors responsible for casting defects finishing and polishing fundamentals of crown and bridge impressions including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> properties types techniques compatibility with crown and bridge model materials properties of model and die materials including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> epoxy and polymer materials gypsum materials manipulation of crown and bridge materials properties of crown and bridge materials: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> casting and pressing materials computer-aided design (CAD) and computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) ceramic bonding materials other relevant materials

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of pattern materials including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ wax and plastic pattern techniques ○ emerging technology techniques • investment and burnout including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ fundamental knowledge of investment materials ○ investing and expansion of the investment ○ burnout ○ waxing and spruing techniques.
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ laboratory sheets ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ WHS procedures <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Link	Link to companion volume implementation guide

HLTDET010X Join alloy structures

Unit code	HLTDET010X	
Unit title	Join alloy structures	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	This version released in HLT Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages. Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements, Removal of pre-requisites. Supersedes HLTDT511C
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills, and knowledge required to join dental alloys using thermal processes, according to prescribed specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention and control procedures.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with current Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australia/New Zealand standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	
1. Solder components	1.1 Analyse the design and joining requirements to identify and position component materials appropriately	

	<p>1.2 Select solder, flux, and heating methods suitable for the component materials and case requirements</p> <p>1.3 Apply solder and control the process to achieve strong and accurate joins</p> <p>1.4 Inspect and evaluate completed joins to ensure integrity and conformity with specifications</p> <p>1.5 Review and refine components, ensuring surfaces are smooth and free of sharp edges or irregularities.</p>
2. Weld components	<p>2.1 Analyse the design and joining requirements to identify and position component materials appropriately</p> <p>2.2 Select welding equipment and settings suitable for the component materials and case requirements</p> <p>2.3 Apply welding techniques to produce strong, accurate joins between components</p> <p>2.4 Inspect and evaluate each weld to ensure integrity, accuracy, and conformity with specifications</p> <p>2.5 Review and refine components, ensuring surfaces are smooth and free of sharp edges or irregularities</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret work orders, component designs, manufacturer instructions for soldering, welding, and materials handling, and infection prevention procedures.
Writing skills to:	record material specifications, welding or soldering parameters, processing outcomes, adjustments, and any defects; label components correctly.
Numeracy skills to:	measure component dimensions, calculate material quantities, control temperature, time, and energy inputs for soldering or welding.
Learning skills to:	apply new welding or soldering techniques, adapt to different alloys, and implement updated manufacturer or workplace procedures.
Oral communication skills to:	communicate with colleagues, supervisors, or operators to confirm design requirements, material selection, and process parameters.

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of the unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• followed at least 2 sets of sequenced written instructions and manufacturer's instructions for preparation of materials for joining alloy structures• used standard precautions and safe work practices to produce at least 2 soldered or welded joints that exhibit biocompatibility and optimum mechanical properties• critically evaluated at least 2 joined alloy structures produced to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements, including joint:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ position○ strength○ integrity○ function.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in the elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• AS5369• organisational health and safety (WHS) procedures• Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control• Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation• organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work• fundamental oral anatomy including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ dentition, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ arrangement of the teeth,○ naming and coding of teeth○ structures of the oral cavity, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ hard and soft palate,○ lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity○ tongue and floor of the mouth○ articulation and occlusion

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dental metallurgy and dental alloys, including noble and non-noble alloys • finishing methods • fluxes • infection prevention and control guidelines for the decontamination of completed laboratory work • orthodontic wires • soldering and welding techniques including laser welding technology.
Assessment Conditions	<p><i>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ organisational procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ Work health and safety (WHS) procedures. <p><i>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</i></p>
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Links	Link to companion volume implementation guide

HLTDET011X Construct ceramic and fixed restorations

Unit code	HLTDET011X	
Unit title	Construct ceramic and fixed restorations	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released on HLT Health Training Package release 3.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Merged HLTDT512D/HLTDT513C</p> <p>Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites. 1.3</p>
	Release 2	<p>Major changes to unit application, performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence.</p>
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills and knowledge required to determine tooth shade and design, construct and finish ceramic and fixed dental restorations according to prescribed specifications, quality standards, and infection prevention and control procedures.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	

Licensing and regulatory information	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	DET
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Take tooth shade	<p>1.1 Interpret work order to verify patient tooth shade requirements</p> <p>1.2 Explain procedure to patient or carer and confirm understanding</p> <p>1.3 Obtain and document informed consent following organisational procedures</p> <p>1.4 Adjust lighting for shade determination</p> <p>1.5 Position patient to optimise visibility and comfort for the procedure</p> <p>1.6 Instruct and support patient during shade assessment</p> <p>1.7 Examine oral cavity while following infection prevention and control requirements</p> <p>1.8 Select shade-matching technique and prepare necessary equipment and materials</p> <p>1.9 Document the selected tooth shade</p> <p>1.10 Advise patient on next steps</p>
2. Prepare sub-structures	<p>2.1 Plan and form substructure according to laboratory work order and restoration requirements</p> <p>2.2 Process substructure according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.3 Evaluate completed substructure to meet design specifications for fit, form, and accuracy</p> <p>2.4 Prepare bonding surface to support porcelain build-up according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p>
3. Select, apply and process ceramics	<p>3.1 Select ceramic materials and plan application according to the prescription, manufacturer's instructions, and workplace procedures</p> <p>3.2 Prepare ceramic materials and restoration surfaces to meet design specifications and quality standards</p> <p>3.3 Process ceramic using firing, curing, or processing techniques according to manufacturer's instructions and case requirements</p> <p>3.4 Evaluate restoration for fit, function, and aesthetic outcomes against specifications and workplace standards</p> <p>3.5 Identify and resolve defects in ceramic restorations following</p>

	<p>organisational procedures</p> <p>3.6 Maintain equipment, tools, and workspace according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.7 Record ceramic selection, application, processing steps, and outcomes, in accordance with organisational procedures</p>
4. Trim, shape and finish ceramic restorations	<p>4.1 Assess the restoration and plan trimming to achieve anatomical shape</p> <p>4.2 Refine and finish the restoration to meet surface texture, smoothness, and aesthetic requirements according to laboratory work order</p> <p>4.3 Evaluate finished restoration for fit, function, integrity, and identify defects</p> <p>4.4 Clean and decontaminate the restoration according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>4.5 Prepare restoration for storage or dispatch, ensuring it is dry, correctly positioned, and outcomes are documented</p>
Foundation skills	
Foundation skills essential to performance are explicit in the performance criteria of this unit of competency. Skills	Description
Learning skills to:	Apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines, to process ceramic restorations and evaluated finished restoration.
Reading skills to:	Interpret work order, technical specifications, infection prevention and control, and manufacturer's instructions for ceramic restoration; document consent
Writing skills to:	Record consent, materials, shades and label models.
Oral communication skills to:	Confirm work order details, position and instruct patient during procedures; discuss follow up procedures.
Numeracy skills to:	Design substructure; finish and evaluate completed restoration.

Assessment Requirements	
Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read and interpreted laboratory work orders to construct the following 4 ceramic and fixed restorations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ one maxillary or mandibular anterior crown ○ one maxillary or mandibular posterior crown ○ one anterior veneer ○ one posterior inlay • constructed 4 ceramic restorations using infection prevention and control guidelines and safe work practices according to organisation procedures including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ one maxillary or mandibular anterior crown ○ one maxillary or mandibular posterior crown ○ one anterior veneer ○ one posterior inlay • evaluated the work produced according to organisational procedures and patient requirements including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ shade of the ceramic matches the work order requirements ○ fit of the restoration is accurate ○ restoration is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ of an appropriate anatomical form ▪ appropriate shape and surface finish ▪ free of faults • restoration provides required occlusion and articulation • proximal contact areas are in contact with the contact areas of the adjacent teeth.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) policies • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity related to crown and bridge structures ○ teeth form and function ○ occlusion • tooth preparation including basic cementation techniques of restorations • dental ceramic restorations • properties of different restoration and substructure materials • ceramic bonding to substructures • composition and properties of dental ceramics • processing ceramic restorations • causes of common faults during construction • critical issues and techniques for taking tooth shades including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ effects of aging, tooth wear and staining on shade ○ colour ○ rationale and objectives for taking shades • social, cultural and psychological factors affecting patient perception and acceptance of tooth shade • factors which influence selection of tooth shades • physics of light refraction including properties of materials used in aesthetic restoration.
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ access to work order • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • organisational procedures according to Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • WHS policies • shade matching equipment

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• lighting-controlled environment <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Mandatory fields are highlighted <input type="checkbox"/>	

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDET012X Construct orthodontic appliances

Unit code	HLTSET012X	
Unit title	Construct orthodontic appliances	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDT514D</p>
	Release 2	Major changes to unit application. Major changes to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct removable orthodontic appliances in a dental technology laboratory.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Select and assemble components and materials	<p>1.1 Interpret the laboratory work order and select materials and preformed components suitable to construct removable orthodontic appliance design and intended function</p> <p>1.2 Confirm that selected materials and components are serviceable, compatible and compliant with the type of devices outlined in the laboratory work orders</p>
2. Construct orthodontic appliance	<p>2.1 Construct custom components according to laboratory work order appliance design requirements, and quality standards</p> <p>2.2 Position and secure components according to laboratory sheet</p> <p>2.3 Apply materials to form the appliance baseplate according to manufacturers' instructions, laboratory work order, and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.4 Process and cure the appliance according to manufacturer's instructions, safety requirements and quality standards</p>
3. Finish orthodontic appliances	<p>3.1 Polish appliance according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>3.2 Trim and finish appliance baseplate according to laboratory design</p> <p>3.3 Finish and polish metal components according to standards</p> <p>3.4 Inspect and evaluate the completed appliance for accuracy according to laboratory work order and manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.5 Decontaminate the appliance according to infection prevention and control guidelines and organisational procedures</p> <p>3.6 Package the finished appliance in a sealed container for dispatch, maintaining traceability and integrity of the product</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>This section describes those language, literacy, numeracy and employment skills that are essential to performance.</p> <p>Foundation skills essential to performance in this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p> <p><i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i></p>	
Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret work orders, component designs and manufacturer's instructions and select pre-formed and custom made components.

Writing skills to:	record material specifications; processing outcomes; complete labels for dispatch.
Numeracy skills to:	measure components; measure, calculate and trim thickness of baseplate. Naming and coding of dentition.
Learning skills to:	Select required components appropriately. Apply methods of trimming and finishing of baseplate and implement updated infection prevention procedures, manufacturer or organisational procedures.

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read and interpreted laboratory work order to construct one orthodontic appliance with active and passive components • constructed one orthodontic appliance using infection prevention and control guidelines and safe work practices • evaluated the work produced according to organisational procedures and patient requirements including the appliance is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ free from defects ○ suitable for insertion in the mouth <p>effective for the purpose</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ meets the requirements of the planned design ○ complies with the work order.
Knowledge Evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • health and safety (WHS) policies • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisation procedures relating to dental laboratory work • fundamental oral anatomy including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function ○ articulation and occlusion ● aims and objectives of orthodontic treatment using removable appliances ● component selection including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dental metallurgy ○ wrought wire fabrication techniques.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory organisational or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects organisational laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Dental Board of Australia guidelines on infection prevention and control on which the candidate bases the planning process ○ laboratory safety manuals and procedures in line with relevant Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ WHS policies on which the candidate bases the planning process. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
<p>Unit mapping information</p>	<p><i>No equivalent unit.</i></p>

HLTDET013X Construct oral splints

Unit code	HLTDET013X	
Unit title	Construct oral splints	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites.</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDT517D</p>
	Release 2	<p>Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.</p>
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct oral splints in a dental technology laboratory environment.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian/New Zealand Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<p><i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i></p>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	

Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Construct splint	1.1 Interpret work order and select suitable materials according to laboratory work order 1.2 Construct splint according to laboratory work order 1.3 Process and cure splint according to manufacturer’s instructions, organisational procedures and safety requirements
2. Trim, shape and finish splint	2.1 Trim and shape splint according to manufacturer’s instructions and organisational procedures 2.2 Inspect and evaluate splint for accuracy, fit and function, comfort considerations according to laboratory work order 2.4 Finish splint according to manufacturer’s instructions 2.5 Decontaminate the splint in accordance with infection prevention and control guidelines and organisational procedures 2.6 Package the splint for dispatch maintaining product integrity and tracability
Foundation skills <i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i>	
Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	Interpret work order sequenced instructions, technical specifications, infection prevention and control guidelines, and manufacturer’s instructions for oral splints.
Writing skills to:	Record materials and label splint for dispatch.
Learning skills to:	Apply updated infection prevention and control guidelines; construct oral splints.
Oral communication skills to:	Confirm work order details.
Numeracy skills to:	Understand arrangement, naming and coding of teeth.
\	
Assessment Requirements	

<p>Performance Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read and interpreted laboratory work order and manufacturers' instructions to construct one oral splint including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ designed and constructed one oral splint for a range of jaw relations and malocclusions according to infection prevention and control guidelines and safe work practices ○ finished at least one oral splint suitable for insertion in the mouth • critically evaluated the oral splint produced to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements, including confirming that the splint is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ suitable for insertion in the mouth ○ free from defects ○ effective for purpose ○ meets requirements of the planned design ○ complies with laboratory work order
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisation procedures • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function ○ articulation and occlusion • dental metallurgy • processing of wax patterns in acrylic resin • relevant material science for completing procedures • signs and symptoms of temporomandibular joint disorder (TMJ) including:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ process for referrals ● use of surveying equipment ● use of vacuum forming procedures ● properties of materials used in the construction of oral splints, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ acrylic resins including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ heat activated ▪ chemically activated ▪ thermoformed
Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ organisational procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>
<i>Mandatory fields are highlighted</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>

HLTDET014X Repair and modify dentures and appliances

Unit code	HLTDET014X	
Unit title	Repair and modify dentures and appliances	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites</p> <p>Supersedes HLTDT518D</p>
	Release 2	<p>Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.</p>
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to reline, rebase, repair and modify removable prostheses.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<p><i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i></p>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare case	<p>1.1 Decontaminate dentures and appliances in line with infection prevention and control guidelines and organisational procedures</p> <p>1.2 Identify specifications according to the laboratory work order</p> <p>1.3 Identify defects to damaged components</p> <p>1.4 Evaluate and position fractured components according to organisational procedures</p>
2. Prepare model	<p>2.1 Construct a dental model according to laboratory work order</p> <p>2.2 Determine need for an articulation key and construct it according to laboratory work order</p>
3. Repair denture or appliance	<p>3.1 Prepare denture or appliance surfaces to support bonding and maintain structural integrity according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.2 Evaluate and reposition components to restore correct spatial and functional relationships</p> <p>3.3 Select and prepare repair materials and processing equipment according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.4 Apply repair materials according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.5 Process and cure materials according to manufacturer's instructions, safety requirements, and quality standards</p>
4. Modify denture or appliance where required	<p>4.1 Decontaminate impressions according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>4.2 Produce a working model</p> <p>4.3 Transfer records and construct an articulation key according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>4.4 Prepare denture or appliance surfaces to support modifications according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p> <p>4.5 Plan and implement modifications according to the laboratory work order</p>
5. Trim, shape and finish denture or appliance	<p>5.1 Plan trimming according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational techniques</p> <p>5.2 Identify irregularities or sharp areas according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>5.3 Refine and polish surfaces to achieve the desired contours, smoothness, and functionality</p> <p>5.4 Evaluate the finished prosthesis according to organisational</p>

	procedures 5.6 Package and document appliance for storage or dispatch
Foundation skills	
<i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i>	
Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret work orders, manufacturer's instructions and repair techniques; transfer records.
Writing skills to:	articulate case and transfer records; label appliances.
Numeracy skills to:	naming, coding and arrangement of teeth; construction of model and measure model material.
Learning skills to:	select required components appropriately. Apply methods of trimming and finishing; implement updated infection prevention procedures, manufacturer or organisational procedures.
Range of conditions	
Assessment Requirements	
Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Interpreted one laboratory work order and manufacturer's instructions, standard precautions and safe work practices to construct repairs and modify a maxillary or mandibular denture including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ replaced, added or modified new or existing artificial teeth ○ replaced, added or modified new or existing metallic components ○ modify the denture base

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • critically evaluated one repaired or modified denture produced to meet technical laboratory and patient requirements, including confirming that the repaired or modified denture is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ compliant with the laboratory work order ○ free from defects ○ functionally effective in line with the design ○ suitable for insertion in the mouth.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AS5369 • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation • organisation policies relating to dental laboratory work • fundamental oral anatomy including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth ○ structures of the oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth ○ teeth form and function • constructional faults that cause fractures of denture base including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ absence of balanced occlusion ○ inadequate polymerisation times and temperatures ○ incorrect dough consistency when packing ○ incorrect positioning of maxillary posterior teeth ○ insufficient thickness of acrylic resin in the anterior palatal region of the denture ○ rapid cooling after processing • constructional faults that cause broken teeth • denture base materials • denture decontamination procedures when modifying acrylic • methods for modifying, repairing and maintaining removable prostheses.

Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ AS5369 ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTOs) mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	<i>No equivalent unit.</i>
<i>Mandatory fields are highlighted</i> <input type="checkbox"/>	

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDET015X Construct complete removable acrylic dentures and appliances

Unit code	HLTDET015X	
Unit title	Construct complete removable acrylic dentures and appliances	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in <i>HLT Health Training Package release 3.0</i> and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages.</p> <p>Minimal changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for assessment including volume and frequency requirements. Removal of pre-requisites Supersedes HLTDT519C</p>
	Release 2	<p>Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.</p>
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct trial prostheses for removable dentures and dental appliances, process them into prescribed clinical materials, and finish them to laboratory and industry standards suitable for insertion.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</i></p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	<p><i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i></p>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	

Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Articulate casts	<p>1.1 Review bite registration according to laboratory work order</p> <p>1.2 Determine the clinician's requirements for cast mounting according to laboratory work order</p> <p>1.3 Mount the maxillary cast on an articulator according to laboratory work order</p> <p>1.4 Mount the opposing cast using the bite registration to establish the occlusal relationship</p>
2. Arrange artificial teeth and wax up denture for try in	<p>2.1 Select appropriate artificial teeth according to laboratory work order and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.2 Position and attach the prescribed artificial teeth to the denture base according to laboratory work order and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.3 Verify alignment, occlusion, aesthetics according to laboratory work order and organisational procedures</p> <p>2.4 Shape and contour the supporting wax to replicate the gingival outline and natural anatomy to achieve correct anatomical form according to laboratory work order and organisational procedures</p>
3. Wax up denture for try-in	<p>2.5 Relieve muscle attachments, verify distal extensions and smooth and round peripheral extensions to ensure comfort and correct fit and anatomical borders to prevent tissue impingement according to laboratory work order</p> <p>2.6 Decontaminate the trial prosthesis according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>2.7 Dry , package and document appliance for storage or dispatch</p>
4. Check and modify the returned trial prosthesis	<p>4.1 Decontaminate and identify required modifications required for returned trial prosthesis according to infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>4.2 Inspect and document loosening, movement or defects in teeth according to operational procedures</p> <p>4.3 Fit the returned trial prosthesis to the model, articulate as required and modify to ensure occlusion, alignment and fit</p> <p>4.4 Document modifications and confirm readiness for processing to final materials according to organisational procedures</p>

<p>5. Wax case for finish consistent with work order</p>	<p>5.1 Determine need for duplication of model for processing final prosthesis</p> <p>5.2 Apply wax to denture base according to work order and laboratory standards</p> <p>5.3 Contour facial and lingual aspects to replicate anatomical form and support aesthetics and function</p> <p>5.4 Verify wax up conforms to instructions in laboratory work order and is ready for processing</p> <p>5.5 Document completion and prepare case for the next stage according to organisational procedures</p>
<p>6. Select and prepare materials and processing technique</p>	<p>6.1 Select the appropriate polymer system and materials for the prosthesis based on laboratory sheet and manufacturer's instructions for use</p> <p>6.2 Identify and prepare the suitable investment technique according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>6.3 Determine the correct processing cycle according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>6.4 Prepare system components following manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures</p>
<p>7. Process denture</p>	<p>7.1 Prepare materials to correct stage of readiness for processing according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>7.2 Apply the polymeric material accurately to mould according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>7.3 Process polymeric material for prescribed time and temperature according to manufacturer's instructions</p>
<p>8. Devest and finish denture</p>	<p>8.1 Devest the model and remove the processed prosthesis according to organisational procedures</p> <p>8.2 Select appropriate methods, materials and equipment for trimming, finishing and polishing the prosthesis according to laboratory work order and manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>8.3 Trim excess material, verify fit and occlusion, and remount the prosthesis on an articulator according to organisational procedures</p> <p>8.4 Reposition models on the articulator as required to assess occlusion and fit</p> <p>8.5 Evaluate the articulated prosthesis to confirm alignment, occlusion and articulation according to laboratory work order</p> <p>8.6 Make any necessary adjustments to maintain the prescribed vertical dimension according to manufacturer's instructions</p>

9. Evaluate denture	<p>8.7 Remove processing irregularities, sharp edges and surface defects according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>8.8 Polish non-fitting surfaces to achieve smooth, clinically accepted finishes</p> <p>9.1 Evaluate the finished prosthesis according to laboratory sheet and organisational procedures</p> <p>9.2 Decontaminate the prosthesis according to infection prevention and control guidelines and place in humid sealed container for dispatch</p> <p>9.3 Documenting completion according to organisational procedures</p>
---------------------	---

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	<p>interpret work orders, prescriptions, and laboratory documentation to identify required procedures, materials, and processing parameters.</p> <p>read and understand manufacturer instructions for materials, polymer systems, and articulator use.</p>
Writing skills to:	<p>document modifications, material selection, processing stages, and completion in accordance with workplace procedures.</p> <p>record observations of trial prosthesis fit and articulation.</p>
Learning skills to:	<p>research and interpret technical manuals, manufacturer instructions, and workplace procedures independently.</p> <p>analyse work orders, prescriptions, and trial outcomes to make informed decisions on materials, articulation, and modifications.</p> <p>reflect on trial and final prosthesis outcomes to improve techniques and accuracy</p>
Oral communication skills to:	<p>communicate with clinicians and colleagues to clarify prescriptions, material requirements, and workflow priorities.</p>

	provide clear instructions for handling and dispatching prostheses.
Numeracy skills to:	measure occlusal relationships, vertical dimensions, and wax contours accurately. apply correct time, temperature, and material ratios during processing.
Digital skills to:	learn to operate dental laboratory equipment, articulators, and digital tools for accurate denture construction. understand material properties and processing technologies to select appropriate systems.

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- read and correctly interpreted two laboratory **work order** including:
 - followed standard precautions and infection prevention and control procedures
 - articulating casts using a face-bow
 - preparing cases for tooth arrangement
 - arranging artificial teeth
 - waxing trial and final prostheses
 - selecting and preparing materials for processing
 - processing, trimming, finishing, and polishing maxillary and mandibular complete acrylic prostheses to a standard suitable for insertion in the mouth
- critically evaluated the trial and finished prostheses to ensure they meet technical laboratory and patient requirements, including:
- compliance with the laboratory **work order**
 - absence of defects in structure, fit and occlusion
 - functional effectiveness and suitability for insertion in the mouth

Knowledge Evidence

The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:

- AS5369
- workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures
- Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control
- Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation
- organisational policies relating to dental laboratory work
- fundamental oral anatomy including:
 - dentition – arrangement of the teeth, naming and coding of teeth
 - structures of the oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior borders of the oral cavity, tongue and floor of the mouth
 - teeth form and function
- articulation procedures
- properties of a range of dental materials used in the construction of removable acrylic prostheses including:
 - atomic structure
 - chemical bonding and reactions
 - classification of materials
 - classification of matter
 - properties of materials
- knowledge of dental polymers including:
 - acrylic and modified acrylic prosthetic teeth
 - acrylic plastics as soft liners
 - acrylic plastics for denture bases including composition and properties
 - acrylic-metal combinations
 - acrylics for construction of custom trays
 - modified acrylic denture base plastics including manipulation and processing
 - the polymerisation process including cross-linked polymers, copolymers, modified polymers and vinyl plastics
- mechanical devices:
 - articulators
 - face-bows
- recording techniques and devices
- relevant material science for carrying out procedures.

Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or in a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace laboratory conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: ○ access to laboratory work order ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control on which the candidate bases the planning process ○ laboratory safety manuals and standard operating procedures in line with relevant Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation ○ workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures <p><u>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</u></p>
Unit mapping information	<p><i>No equivalent unit.</i></p>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTDET016X Design digital dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided design (CAD)

Unit code	HLTDET016X	
Unit title	Design digital dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided design (CAD)	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	N/A
	Release 2	Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to plan and design dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided design (CAD) technologies within a dental technology laboratory.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	
1. Determine restoration or appliance requirements	1.1 Identify restoration or appliance requirements according to laboratory sheet	

	<p>1.2 Use digital technologies safely and effectively in a laboratory environment</p> <p>1.3 Handle dental materials according to organisational procedures and infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>1.4 Demonstrate understanding of how digital systems and equipment function within the laboratory workflow</p> <p>1.5 Determine required adjustments by assessing the quality of impressions, models, or intraoral scans according to organisational procedures</p> <p>1.6 Construct a digital representation of the impression by scanning physical models or downloading intraoral scan data according to organisational procedures</p> <p>1.7 Identify suitable technologies and computer-aided design (CAD) software to digitally design according to organisation procedures</p>
<p>2. Design restoration or appliance using computer-aided design (CAD)</p>	<p>2.1 Determine and access appropriate technologies and CAD software for the digital design task</p> <p>2.2 Manage digital impression files according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.3 Examine and manipulate 3-D shapes to create accurate 3-D representations of the restoration or appliance</p> <p>2.4 Establish a coordinate system and orientation that aligns with the laboratory work order and clinical requirements</p> <p>2.5 Implement CAD software features and functions to develop a digital design that meets the restoration or appliance specifications</p> <p>2.6 Evaluate and enhance the digital design using rendering techniques to support accuracy, aesthetics, and functional outcomes</p>
<p>3. Finalise digital design for manufacturing</p>	<p>3.1 Evaluate the digital design to ensure it accurately reflects the requirements of the laboratory work order</p> <p>3.2 Perform adjustments to maintain the integrity, accuracy, and functional outcomes of the design.</p> <p>3.3 Confirm format of digital design according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>3.4 Prepare and store the final digital design according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.5 Troubleshoot basic issues with digital systems and equipment according to organisational procedures</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	<p>interpret work orders, laboratory work order, clinical notes, and digital design specifications to identify requirements, materials, and procedural instructions.</p> <p>analyse manufacturer instructions, safety guidelines, and technical documents to support correct application of materials and equipment.</p> <p>review digital files, CAD models, and documentation to verify design accuracy and completeness.</p>
Writing skills to:	<p>record case details, material selection, processing parameters, and outcomes accurately in workplace documentation.</p> <p>produce clear and concise notes to support communication with clinicians, patients, or team members.</p> <p>document deviations, defects, and required adjustments in accordance with organisational procedures.</p>
Learning skills to:	<p>apply new knowledge and skills from workplace procedures, manufacturer guidelines, and professional development to improve practice.</p> <p>adapt techniques based on feedback, observations, and evaluation of outcomes.</p> <p>reflect on errors or non-conformances and implement corrective strategies for continuous improvement.</p>
Oral communication skills to:	<p>explain procedures, processes, and treatment steps clearly to patients, carers, and team members.</p>

	<p>confirm understanding of work orders, prescriptions, and clinician requirements through questioning and discussion.</p> <p>collaborate with team members to clarify design, modification, and processing requirements.</p>
Numeracy skills to:	<p>calculate measurements, dimensions, and angles to ensure accuracy in model construction, appliance fabrication, and CAD design.</p> <p>interpret scales, ratios, and proportions for material mixing, restoration sizing, and occlusal adjustments.</p> <p>apply arithmetic, estimation, and measurement skills to verify fit, spacing, and alignment of components.</p>

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • designed three digital models and appliances from the list provided below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 3D printed models ○ custom impression trays ○ 3D base plates ○ oral splints ○ cast alloy removable partial denture frameworks ○ crown and bridge structures • imported digital files into design software, including 3Shape and exocad, ensuring accurate orientation and settings • exported and prepared files for manufacturing, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ file format conversion ○ support structure addition ○ print/milling preparation • produced digital designs that meet the requirements of the laboratory work order, including orientation, dimensions, and preparation for manufacturing
-----------------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> operated digital systems and equipment according to organisational procedures detected, troubleshoot, and resolved basic operational or technical issues with digital systems and equipment, ensuring continuity of workflow maintained equipment and digital systems according to manufacturer and workplace requirements
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation organisation procedures relating to dental laboratory work requirements and capabilities of technologies and computer-aided design (CAD) software used in dental laboratories storage and management of digital design files to maintain integrity, accessibility, and confidentiality benefits, limitations, and applications of CAD in digital dentistry commonly used types of CAD technologies and their application in designing restorations and appliances digital design processes and procedures, including creation, adjustment, orientation, and preparation for manufacturing digital and physical impressions, including their properties and interpretation for accurate digital modeling types of digital restorations and appliances and their functional and aesthetic requirements properties of materials used for computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) and their suitability for different types of restorations and appliances common CAM types and processes in digital dentistry, including milling and 3-D printing fundamentals of oral anatomy, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> dentition – arrangement, naming and coding teeth structures of the oral cavity – hard and soft palate, lateral and posterior, borders, tongue and floor to mouth tooth form and function relevant to restoration and appliance design

Assessment Conditions	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects workplace conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • facilities, equipment, and resources that reflect typical workplace settings, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ access to a variety of laboratory work orders with case specifications ○ digital and physical impressions or models representing realistic clinical scenarios ○ computer-aided design (CAD) software and technologies commonly used in the dental industry ○ materials suitable for testing or demonstrating digital design outcomes ○ Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control ○ laboratory safety procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation. <p><u>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</u></p>
Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Links	Link to Companion Volume Implementation Guide.

HLTDET017 Construct dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)

Unit code	HLTDET017	
Unit title	Construct dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	N/A
	Release 2	Major update to application. Major updates to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence. Foundation skills made explicit.
Application	<p>This unit of competency describes the skills and knowledge required to construct dental restorations and appliances using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) technologies within a dental technology laboratory.</p> <p>The unit applies to dental technicians working in dental technology laboratories who exercise technical judgement and autonomy in the completion of complex tasks and take responsibility for the quality and evaluation of their own work outputs.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian/New Zealand Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>	
Licensing and regulatory information	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	DET	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	
Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.	
1. Determine restoration or appliance requirements.	1.1 Assess restoration or appliance requirements according to the laboratory work order	

	<p>1.2 Verify materials and digital case information according to with infection prevention and control guidelines</p> <p>1.3 Confirm completeness and accuracy of the laboratory work order</p> <p>1.4 Evaluate digital designs or case data for manufacturing suitability and identify required modifications</p> <p>1.5 Obtain approval of design or case specifications according to organisational procedures</p> <p>1.6 Prepare computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) technologies and resources for production</p>
2. Construct restoration or appliance using computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)	<p>2.1 Prepare CAM software and technologies according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.2 Import and verify digital design files to confirm suitability according to manufacturer's instructions</p> <p>2.3 Determine and prepare appropriate materials for the restoration or appliance according to specifications</p> <p>2.4 Configure and operate CAM technologies to produce the restoration or appliance</p> <p>2.5 Monitor the manufacturing process and respond to issues or variations to maintain production accuracy</p>
3. Finalise restoration or appliance	<p>3.1 Inspect the restoration or appliance to confirm it meets laboratory work order specifications and identify any defects</p> <p>3.2 Make adjustments required to achieve accuracy, fit, and structural integrity</p> <p>3.3 Complete finishing processes required to prepare the restoration or appliance for use or dispatch</p> <p>3.4 Evaluate the completed restoration or appliance against the laboratory work order, technical standards, and case requirements, identify discrepancies, and document required actions</p> <p>3.5 Finalise, disinfect, and package the restoration or appliance according to organisational and infection prevention and control procedures</p>

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

Skills	Description
Reading skills to:	interpret laboratory work orders , digital case information, software prompts, manufacturer instructions, and workplace procedures to

	determine design and manufacturing requirements
Writing skills to:	records design decisions, adjustments, file details, and production outcomes using workplace terminology and documentation formats
Learning skills to:	applies feedback, adapts to new CAM technologies and workflows, and updates skills to meet evolving digital dentistry practices and workplace requirements
Numeracy skills:	applies measurement, scale, and spatial awareness when orienting designs, positioning restorations, selecting materials, and configuring CAM parameters
Oral communication skills to:	seeks clarification from supervisors or clinicians, confirms specifications, and reports issues or required adjustments using clear technical language
Digital skills to:	use computer-aided manufacturing processes

Assessment Requirements

Performance Evidence

The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- Interpreted 4 laboratory sheets including:
 - followed standard infection prevention and control guidelines
 - followed workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures
- used computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) technologies to construct 4 restorations or appliances including:
 - one unit of crown and bridge work
 - 3 restorations or appliances from 2 of the following categories:
 - prosthetics
 - chrome casting
 - orthodontics
 - splints

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • monitored CAM processes, made adjustments to settings or materials as required, and ensured that each restoration or appliance met design specifications and technical standards. • completed post-manufacture processes, including finishing, disinfection, and packaging, according to workplace procedures and infection control requirements.
<p>Knowledge Evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Australian Dental Association guidelines on infection prevention and control • Commonwealth legislation and State/Territory legislation • workplace health and safety (WHS) procedures • organisational procedures relating to dental laboratory work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ use of personal protective equipment (PPE) ○ safe use of computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) technologies ○ storage and management of digital designs • benefits, limitations, and applications of computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) in digital dentistry • commonly used CAM technologies and equipment within dental laboratories, including their capabilities, limitations, and maintenance requirements • computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) processes and procedures for constructing digital restorations and appliances, including setup, operation, monitoring, and adjustments • digital file types used for restorations and appliances and their compatibility with computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) systems • types of digital restorations and appliances and their functional and aesthetic requirements • anatomical features of restorations and appliances, including occlusal, proximal, and tissue-contacting surfaces relevant to the design and computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) process

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● material properties applicable to computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) production, including suitability, handling, and limitations of each material ● surface finishing techniques, their purposes, and application to restorations and appliances ● fundamentals of oral anatomy, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dentition including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ arrangement ▪ naming ▪ coding of teeth ○ oral cavity structures including <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ hard and soft palate ▪ lateral and posterior borders ▪ tongue ▪ floor of mouth ○ tooth form and function relevant to restoration or appliance design.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in a dental laboratory workplace or a simulated dental laboratory environment that reflects typical workplace conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● facilities, equipment, and resources that reflect workplace practice, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ access to four laboratory work order with case specifications ○ digital and/or physical impressions or models suitable for computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) production ○ computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) technologies and software commonly used in dental laboratories ○ materials for constructing restorations and appliances including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ crown and bridge units ▪ prosthetics ▪ chrome casting ▪ orthodontics, or splints. ○ Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control guidelines ○ laboratory safety procedures ○ Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation. <p><u>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</u></p>

Unit mapping information	No equivalent unit.
Links	Link to Companion Volume Implementation Guide.

FIRST DRAFT

HLTINF002X Process reusable medical devices and equipment

Unit code	HLTINF002X	
Unit title	Process reusable medical devices and equipment	
Modification History	Release	Comments
	Release 1	<p>This version was released in HLT Health Training Package release 2.0 and meets the requirements of the 2012 Standards for Training Packages</p> <p>Significant changes to the elements and performance criteria. New evidence requirements for the assessment, including volume and frequency requirements. Significant change to knowledge evidence. Removed prerequisite.</p>
	Release 2	
Application	<p>This unit describes the skills and knowledge required to clean, sterilise and package reusable medical devices and equipment.</p> <p>This unit applies to workers in office-based health practice settings such as general practitioner (GP) surgeries, dental practices and other environments where a limited range of sterilisation equipment may be available.</p> <p>They follow established procedures and work under general supervision.</p> <p><i>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian/New Zealand standards and industry codes of practice</i></p> <p><i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i></p>	
Pre-requisite unit	Nil	
Competency field	INF	
Unit sector	Health	
Elements	Performance criteria	

Elements describe the essential outcomes.	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare to clean used items	<p>1.1 Sort reusable medical devices and safely dispose of single use devices in accordance with safe work practices, infection prevention and control, legislative and organisational procedures.</p> <p>1.2 Segregate and dispose of waste according to organisational procedures and legislative requirements.</p> <p>1.3 Disassemble reusable medical devices and equipment for cleaning and disinfection according to manufacturer's instructions.</p>
2. Clean and dry used items	<p>2.1 Maintain work flow in reprocessing area according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.2 Interpret safety data sheet (SDS) and select required cleaning products.</p> <p>2.3 Select cleaning processes according to manufacturer's instructions, construction and composition of reusable medical devices.</p> <p>2.4 Reduce the generation of aerosols according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.5 Prepare cleaning chemicals according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures.</p> <p>2.6 Dry and inspect reusable medical devices for cleanliness and damage according to manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures.</p>
3. Prepare and pack items for sterilisation	<p>3.1 Open and unlock reusable medical devices with hinges or ratchets.</p> <p>3.2 Prepare instrument trays in accordance with organisational procedures.</p> <p>3.3 Package or wrap reusable medical devices to prevent damage to delicate items according to manufacturer's instructions.</p> <p>3.4 Use chemical indicators according to standards.</p> <p>3.5 Pack, secure and label sterile barrier systems (SBS) to comply with aseptic removal principles.</p>
4. Sterilise loads	<p>4.1 Check cleaning of steriliser and accessory equipment according to manufacturer's instructions.</p> <p>4.2 Operate steriliser features in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.</p>

	<p>4.3 Assign cycle and batch control number and complete documentation.</p> <p>4.4 Load steriliser to ensure sterilant contact and according to standards.</p> <p>4.5 Remove sterilised load immediately on completion of cycle.</p> <p>4.6 Release processed items according to manufacturer's instructions, standard and organisational procedures and manual handling requirements.</p>
5. Comply with quality management requirements	<p>5.1 Monitor performance and maintenance of sterilisers and associated equipment according to performance qualification, manufacturer's instructions and organisational procedures.</p> <p>5.2 Complete documentation requirements for sterilisation cycles, batch control and load release according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>5.3 Report and document all steriliser faults, malfunction and load non-conformance according to organisational procedures.</p> <p>5.4 Store documentation in accordance with organisational procedures.</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p><i>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</i></p>	
Skills	Description
Assessment Requirements	
Performance Evidence	<p>The candidate must show evidence of the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteris of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> followed organisation procedures, work processes, safe manual handling requirements and national standards for the

	<p>reprocessing of reusable medical devices on at least 3 occasions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • operated and monitored reprocessing equipment on at least one occasion • identified and responded to routine process and maintenance problems and variations.
<p>Knowledge Evidence <i>Mandatory field</i></p>	<p>The candidate must be able to demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes the knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • roles and responsibilities of those involved in reprocessing in different health contexts • safe work practices, standard precautions and organisation protocols for the reprocessing and storage of reusable medical devices • risk factors associated with manual tasks and safe manual handling techniques • key aspects of Spauldings classification • safe work practices and standard precautions when handling and disposing of sharps • manual instrument cleaning techniques • the procedure for use of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ steam sterilisers ○ thermal washer-disinfector ○ automated lubrication device ○ drying cabinet ○ hermetic heat sealers.
<p>Assessment Conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations have not been provided in the workplace or may occur only rarely.</p> <p>The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use of suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ infection control policies and procedures ○ soiled re-usable medical devices ○ operational cleaning and sterilisation equipment ○ safety data sheets ○ manufacturer instructions • modelling of industry operating conditions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ presence of time constraints for activities

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ presence of situations requiring problem solving. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's)AQF mandatory competency requirements for assessors.</p>
Unit mapping information	
Links	Link to Companion Volume Implementation Guide

FIRST DRAFT

HLTOHC007X Recognise and respond to oral health issues

Unit code	HLTOHC007X								
Unit title	Recognise and respond to oral health issues								
Unit mapping information	HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTOHC001 Recognise and respond to oral health issues								
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comment</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>3</td><td><i>Minor change to application. Minor changes to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence</i></td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td><i>HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTOHC001 Recognise and respond to oral health issues.</i></td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>	3	<i>Minor change to application. Minor changes to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence</i>	2	HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections	1	<i>HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTOHC001 Recognise and respond to oral health issues.</i>
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comment</i>								
3	<i>Minor change to application. Minor changes to performance criteria, performance evidence and knowledge evidence</i>								
2	HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections								
1	<i>HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues supersedes and is not equivalent to HLTOHC001 Recognise and respond to oral health issues.</i>								
Application	<p>This unit describes skills and knowledge required to identify variations and recognise oral health issues through a visual check, observation of patient behaviour and habits, signs and symptoms and physical condition of patients. This enables the candidate to respond appropriately to the clinical findings to initiate follow up oral health care.</p> <p>This unit applies to workers in a range of health and community services environments where their work role</p>								

	<p>requires them to recognise and respond to oral health issues.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	<i>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</i>
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	OHC
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Identify variations in patient behaviour and habits	<p>1.1. Identify opportunities to observe patient behaviour, physical functions, capabilities and habits that may indicate oral health issues or associated pain or discomfort</p> <p>1.2. Observe, listen for self-reports and question patient, family or carer to determine whether the patient is experiencing pain or discomfort associated with oral health issues</p> <p>1.3. Access relevant information on contributing factors that produces variation from normal behaviour.</p> <p>1.4. Support patients special care needs according to organisational procedures</p>

<p>2. Undertake basic visual oral check and questioning</p>	<p>2.1. Obtain consent from the patient, family or carer to conduct basic visual oral check and questioning according to organisational procedures</p> <p>2.2. Adapt environment for patient needs and comfort</p> <p>2.3. Provide support for patient's head or chin, to enhance visual access without creating discomfort for the patient</p> <p>2.4. Seek assistance from patient to open their own mouth to limit hand contact inside the mouth</p> <p>2.5. Prepare and perform basic visual oral checks in line with own work role and use of standard precautions</p> <p>2.6. Identify signs and symptoms of oral health issues that may indicate variation from normal and listen to self-reports</p>
<p>3. Follow up and promote ongoing oral health care</p>	<p>3.1. Complete documentation and reporting processes, using information from patient and family or carer or other relevant people according to organisational procedures</p> <p>3.2. Discuss oral health issues with patient and family or carer in line with organisational policies and procedures and respecting patient priorities and choices</p> <p>3.3. Take appropriate action within work role, including liaising with supervisor in consultation with patient to ensure appropriate referral occurs</p> <p>3.4. Use focussed communication strategies to provide information relevant to promoting and maintaining good oral health</p> <p>3.5. Provide instruction to support patients to take a self-care approach to oral health in line with individual needs</p> <p>3.6. Identify and address key barriers to management or self-management of oral health.</p> <p>3.7. Review and monitor oral health issues.</p>
<p>Foundation skills</p> <p>The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.</p>	

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	refer to documentation
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	complete documentation
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	use focussed communication to discuss oral health issues; provide instruction on oral healthcare
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	address changing key barriers to self management

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • perform a visual oral health check on 5 different patients, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ identified signs and symptoms related to oral health care issues ○ gathered relevant information from visual check and questioning to initiate appropriate follow up oral health care ○ used safe manual handling techniques as required when working with patients with special care needs.
Knowledge evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • basic anatomy and physiology underpinning oral health, including what is considered healthy and unhealthy

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• patient behaviour and habits which contribute to oral health issues• causes and prevention of tooth decay, gum disease and tooth wear, including erosion, abrasion and attrition• effective self-care practices for oral health including cause, control and prevention of dental plaque• State or Territory and national government policy and programs and reporting processes for oral health accessibility to services, including availability of private and public oral health services, including eligibility for services• role of oral health professionals• factors that impact on oral health, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ abuse including neglect of oral health needs○ access to dental and health services○ alcohol, licit and illicit drugs and substances, over the counter and herbal treatments○ correct infant feeding practices○ damage from habitual grinding of teeth○ diet and nutrition, including fluids and excessive intake of sugar○ fluoride○ general health and wellbeing○ immunosuppressant conditions, HIV, chemotherapy and radiation○ injury to mouth, including from a seizure○ medical history○ oral piercings○ patient oral health information○ presence of plaque and calculus
--	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ psychological issues, including fear of being seen without dentures or persisting with ill-fitting dentures for satisfaction of others ○ salivary function ○ smoking ○ social and cultural determinants of health ○ susceptible tooth surfaces ○ transmission of bacteria particularly from family or carer to child ○ teeth misalignment causing trauma to teeth ○ trauma to mouth as a result of an accident ● communication strategies that focus on patient needs including mental health and disabilities ● safe manual handling techniques ● organisational policies and procedures for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ patient privacy ○ confidentiality of patient information and disclosure ○ documentation and reporting ○ healthy eating recommendations as identified in the National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines.
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <p>The following aspect of the performance evidence must have been demonstrated using 10 simulation scenarios prior to demonstration in the workplace or with members of the general public:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● performing a visual oral health check <p>Assessment must ensure:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) • access to current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards • access to current Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines • access to National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines • access to organisational policies and procedures for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ patient privacy ○ confidentiality of patient information and disclosure ○ documentation and reporting ○ modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in oral health care work. <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

HLTOHC008X Inform and support patients and groups about oral health

Unit code	<i>HLTOHC008X</i>	
Unit title	<i>Inform and support patients and groups about oral health</i>	
Unit mapping information		
Modification history	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>
	3	<i>Minor change to application.</i>
	2	HLTOHC008 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC008 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.
	1	HLTOHC008 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC002 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health.
Application	<p>This unit describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to provide practical information and instruction to patients and groups to promote and support good oral health care practices. This enables the candidate to provide health promotion and practical demonstration and instruction of oral hygiene practices and techniques.</p> <p>This unit applies to workers in a range of health and community services environments whose work roles</p>	

	<p>provide them with an opportunity to promote and support good oral health care.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	OHC
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Develop and maintain understanding of oral health information and issues	<p>1.1. Use credible sources of oral health information to interpret what constitutes good oral health.</p> <p>1.2. Maintain current knowledge on the risk factors and outcomes associated with poor oral health and hygiene practices.</p> <p>1.3. Identify oral health hygiene techniques used to address specific patient needs and preferences.</p> <p>1.4. Demonstrate own commitment to oral health through awareness and application of effective self-care oral health practices.</p>

	<p>1.5. Recognise social and cultural determinants of health as well as varying individual motivations and capacity to carry out good oral health care practices.</p>
<p>2. Provide information related to oral health using a person-centred approach</p>	<p>2.1. Address agreed outcomes in planning for oral health care needs by explaining the link between oral health and general health.</p> <p>2.2. Prepare information so that it is relevant to the target audience and use a person-centred approach to identify and respond effectively to individual needs.</p> <p>2.3. Engage and respond to concerns of patient by providing oral health care information, including issues associated with poor oral health and hygiene.</p> <p>2.4. Negotiate with patient a flexible approach to delivery of oral health information.</p> <p>2.5. Explain relevant information on the importance of regular oral checks with an oral health practitioner.</p>
<p>3. Provide specific information and instruction on oral hygiene self-care, techniques and appropriate aids</p>	<p>3.1. Collect data specific to patient by questioning, observing and accessing available information from patient or carer.</p> <p>3.2. Instruct and explain tooth brushing and soft tissue techniques and use of appropriate aids, detailing their advantages in terms of achieving and maintaining effective oral health.</p> <p>3.3. Demonstrate and provide instruction on the care of partial and full dentures.</p> <p>3.4. Identify and implement opportunities for participants to demonstrate learned skills.</p> <p>3.5. Encourage and support patients, including people with special needs to follow effective self-care techniques for oral hygiene practices to make knowledge, attitude and behavioural changes where possible.</p>

4. Evaluate effectiveness of oral health information session	4.1. Obtain feedback from the patient or group to determine whether the information is correctly received and understood. 4.2. Reflect on outcomes and implement changes to information or delivery processes based on feedback.
--	---

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	use oral health written information
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	document data
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	explain procedures and negotiate
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	document data
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	Implement information changes

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence

The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- communicated effectively to at least one individual patient and a group of at least five patients to provide information that addresses their oral health care needs, including:
 - impact of oral health on general health and wellbeing

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ causes and prevention of dental plaque, dental caries, dental erosion and periodontal disease and dental trauma ○ diet and nutrition ○ denture care on patients with dentures ● for each of the above, evaluate how well target audience has understood the oral health and self-care practice information provided ● for each of the above, reflect on and improve own level and application of skills and knowledge to motivate target audience and achieve key oral health outcomes.
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● basic anatomy and physiology underpinning oral health, including what is considered healthy and unhealthy ● patient behaviour and habits which contribute to oral health issues ● causes and prevention of tooth decay, gum disease and tooth wear including erosion, abrasion and attrition ● what constitutes good oral health: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ breath without offensive odour ○ inflammation and lesion-free soft tissue in mouth ○ intact and stable teeth without cavities ○ moist lips without chapping ○ no build-up of food, calculus or plaque ○ no oral pain

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ pink, moist, uncoated tongue○ watery plentiful saliva○ well-fitting dentures● accessibility to services, including availability of private and public oral health services and eligibility for services● effective self-care practices for oral health including cause, control and prevention of dental plaque● factors that impact on oral health, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ abuse including neglect of oral health needs○ access to dental and health services○ alcohol, licit and illicit drugs and substances, over the counter and herbal treatments○ bacteria in dental plaque○ correct infant feeding practices○ damage from habitual grinding of teeth○ diet and nutrition, including fluids and excessive intake of sugar○ fluoride○ general health and wellbeing○ immunosuppressant conditions, HIV, chemotherapy and radiation○ injury to mouth, including from a seizure○ medical history○ oral piercings○ patient oral health information○ presence of plaque and calculus○ psychological issues, including fear of being seen without dentures or persisting with ill-fitting dentures for satisfaction of others○ salivary function○ smoking○ social and cultural determinants of health
--	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ susceptible tooth surfaces ○ transmission of bacteria particularly from family or carer to child ○ teeth misalignment causing trauma to teeth ○ trauma to the mouth as a result of an accident ● healthy eating and drinking recommendations as identified in National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines ● processes to obtain feedback and evaluate health information sessions for future improvement
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions. The following conditions must be met for this unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● access to suitable facilities, equipment and resources including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ credible sources of information on oral health ○ oral health equipment and aids ○ dentures ● access to current Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines ● access to National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines ● modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in oral health care work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>

Links

Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register – <https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary>

FIRST DRAFT

HLTOHC009X Apply and use basic oral health products

Unit code	HLTOHC009X								
Unit title	Apply and use basic oral health products								
Unit mapping information	HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC003 Apply and manage use of basic oral health products								
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><i>Release</i></th> <th><i>Comments</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Minor change to application.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC003 Apply and manage use of basic oral health products</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>	3	Minor change to application.	2	HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.	1	HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC003 Apply and manage use of basic oral health products
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>								
3	Minor change to application.								
2	HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections.								
1	HLTOHC009 Apply and use basic oral health products supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC003 Apply and manage use of basic oral health products								
Application <i>Mandatory field</i>	<p>This unit describes the performance outcomes, skills and knowledge required to apply and use basic oral health products and provide assistance to patients in the use of those products as identified in an individualised oral health care plan.</p> <p>This unit applies to workers whose work roles specifically include the application of identified oral health products in line with product guidelines and in compliance with all regulations related to the supply and use of regulated products, excluding fluoride varnish.</p>								

	The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	OHC
Unit sector	Health
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare for and participate in the application of basic oral health products	<p>1.1. Identify and comply with manufacturers' guidelines relating to each product and its application.</p> <p>1.2. Identify high risk products and comply with specific guidelines relating to their application.</p> <p>1.3. Explain product application process and purpose to patient and carer in line with product guidelines, oral health care benefits and any risks.</p> <p>1.4. Obtain feedback from patient to determine that procedure is understood and obtain consent from patient or carer to undertake process.</p> <p>1.5. Confirm patient is comfortably positioned according to individual needs.</p> <p>1.6. Prepare products and equipment as required and check the expiry date on product.</p>

<p>2. Apply basic oral health products</p>	<p>2.1. Determine volume and strength of product to apply in a safe and effective manner in line with oral health care plan and product guidelines.</p> <p>2.2. Supervise and support patient to apply own product where able.</p> <p>2.3. Where assistance is required position self to suit patient or situation.</p> <p>2.4. Ensure application is undertaken using correct size and type of applicator at correct location.</p> <p>2.5. Adapt techniques or arrangements outlined in the oral health care plan in case of patient refusal or inability to comply.</p>
<p>3. Support oral health and oral hygiene of patients with special care needs</p>	<p>3.1. Support patient with special care needs in line with oral health care plan.</p> <p>3.2. Identify common oral health problems associated with patients with palliative care needs and take appropriate action in line with their needs.</p> <p>3.3. Identify oral health problems associated with nil by mouth instructions and take appropriate action in line with patient needs.</p> <p>3.4. Access relevant information on common difficulties associated with dementia that may result in oral health problems and take appropriate action in line with patient needs.</p> <p>3.5. Update knowledge of common side effects of medication on oral health and initiate follow up care with health practitioner on identified patient needs.</p> <p>3.6. Ensure identified preventive measures are implemented in line with oral health care plan.</p>
<p>4. Complete reporting and documentation and evaluate outcomes</p>	<p>4.1. Document and record processes undertaken and report any concerns arising during oral health practices.</p> <p>4.2. Maintain and file documentation using relevant technology.</p>

	4.3. Evaluate the feedback and outcomes of the processes undertaken in collaboration with health care team to adjust oral health care plan.
--	---

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	update knowledge
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	document oral health care plans
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	collaborate with healthcare team
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	Determine product volume and strength
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	Update oral health knowledge

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence

The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:

- applied oral health products excluding fluoride varnish, to at least 3 patients that require special care needs in line with product guidelines and oral health care benefits and in compliance with all regulations related to the supply and use of regulated products
- identified and respond to risks associated with applying oral health products including:
 - allergic reaction or sensitivity to products
 - injury to soft tissue from products.

Knowledge evidence

The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:

- relevant State or Territory and national government policy and programs and reporting processes for oral health and regulations related to the supply and use of regulated products
- accessibility to services including availability of private and public oral health services, including eligibility for services
- basic anatomy and physiology underpinning oral health, including what is considered healthy and unhealthy
- benefits and risks associated with basic oral health products
- common equipment and aids utilised in the application of oral hygiene products including mouth props
- factors that impact on oral health, including:
 - abuse or neglect of oral health needs
 - access to dental and health services
 - accumulation of plaque and calculus
 - alcohol, licit and illicit drugs and substances, over the counter and herbal treatments
 - alcohol misuse
 - bacteria in dental plaque
 - correct infant feeding practices
 - damage from habitual grinding of teeth
 - diet and nutrition, including fluids
 - fluoride
 - general health and wellbeing

- | | |
|--|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• immunosuppressant conditions, HIV, chemotherapy and radiation• injury to mouth, including from a seizure• medical history• oral piercings• patient oral health information• psychological issues, including fear of being seen without dentures or persisting with ill-fitting dentures for satisfaction of others• salivary function• smoking• social and cultural determinants of health• susceptible tooth surfaces• transmission of bacteria particularly from family or carer to child• trauma to the mouth as a result of an accident• healthy eating recommendations as identified in the National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines.• individualised oral health care support plans, including terminology• work health and safety (WHS) issues and procedures, including those related to manual handling and infection control• oral disease and broad treatment options available• oral health issues for identified high risk sub-populations• oral side effects of medications, including metallic taste in the mouth, dry mouth syndrome and ulcers• dry mouth syndrome or xerostomia related to conditions including diabetes, ageing |
|--|--|

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• own work role and responsibilities in oral health care• personal safety and security risks associated with provision of oral hygiene care support• practical use of oral health products• principles and practices in undertaking technical skills associated with the application of oral health products• principles and practices of confidentiality, privacy, respect and consent• processes and strategies to support people with oral hygiene care needs• role of carers in relation to oral health care needs of patients• saliva and its role in the maintenance of oral health:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• acting as a lubricant• delivering calcium, phosphate and fluoride to the tooth surface• protecting teeth by neutralising acid• significance of service setting, including specific contexts, including providing oral hygiene in a patient care setting or in a patient's private home• signs and symptoms of an allergic reaction to an oral health product• specialist oral care and support for patients in circumstances, including those who:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• are aged• are on nil by mouth instructions• are receiving palliative care• are undergoing chemotherapy
--	---

- | | |
|--|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• who have enteral feeding, including via a nasogastric tube or a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tube• have dementia• have epilepsy• have intellectual or physical disability• have loss of tooth through extraction• have loss of tooth through injury• have medical or psychiatric conditions• have post-surgery or trauma needs• strategies to minimise personal safety and security risks associated with provision of oral hygiene care support• symptoms and signs that suggest a need for further assessment or treatment• the interaction between oral health and general health• common oral health problems associated with patients with palliative care needs including but not limited to:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ angular cheilitis○ candida or thrush○ debris○ dental caries○ dry mouth and lips○ excessive saliva○ hairy leukoplakia○ herpes simplex○ kaposi sarcoma including HIV patients○ sensitive mouth○ ulcers, including viral and traumatic○ processes to document and evaluate oral health practices. |
|--|--|

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • basic oral health care products, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ products specified in the patient's individualised oral health care plan, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ alcohol-free mouthwash ▪ antibacterial products ▪ lip moisturiser ▪ non-medically prescribed therapeutic agents and topical analgesic ▪ remineralisation products ▪ saliva substitutes or stimulants: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chewing gum • gels • liquids • lozenges • sprays
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must have been demonstrated in the workplace or in a simulated environment that reflects workplace conditions.</p> <p>The following aspect of the performance evidence must have been demonstrated using ten simulation scenarios prior to demonstration in the workplace or with members of the general public:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • applying identified oral health products safely and effectively <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • access to suitable equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ age related oral health care resources ○ appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) ○ oral hygiene self-care aids and technique

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ specialised equipment, placebo or simulated oral health products utilised in provision of oral hygiene • access to current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards • access to current Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines • access to National Health and Medical Research Council's (NHMRC) Australian dietary guidelines • modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in oral health care work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

HLTOHC0XX Apply fluoride varnish

Unit code	HLTOHS0XX										
Unit title	<i>Apply fluoride varnish</i>										
Unit mapping information	Nil										
Modification history	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th><i>Release</i></th><th><i>Comments</i></th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>4</td><td><i>Minor changes to application, performance evidence, knowledge evidence and assessment conditons</i></td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Supersedes and is equivalent to Release 2 HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish. Updated: Mapping details</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>Supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC006 Apply fluoride varnish.</td></tr></tbody></table>	<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>	4	<i>Minor changes to application, performance evidence, knowledge evidence and assessment conditons</i>	3	Supersedes and is equivalent to Release 2 HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish. Updated: Mapping details	2	Supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections	1	HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC006 Apply fluoride varnish.
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>										
4	<i>Minor changes to application, performance evidence, knowledge evidence and assessment conditons</i>										
3	Supersedes and is equivalent to Release 2 HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish. Updated: Mapping details										
2	Supersedes and is equivalent to Release 1 HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish. Updated: Mapping details and minor corrections										
1	HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish supersedes and is equivalent to HLTOHC006 Apply fluoride varnish.										
Application	This unit describes the skills and knowledge required by practitioners and dental assistants typically working in rural, remote and isolated areas or facilities that have knowledge and experience in oral health care, to apply fluoride varnish in line with prescribed treatment as outlined in an individualised oral health care plan and in accordance with relevant jurisdictional, legislative and regulatory requirements.										

	<p>The unit applies to dental assistants, registered Aboriginal and/or Torres Strait Islander health practitioners, registered nurses and registered enrolled nurses in primary health care settings in rural, remote and isolated areas where the work roles may require the application of fluoride varnish.</p> <p>The skills in this unit must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards for maintaining infection control and industry codes of practice.</p>
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.
Pre-requisite unit	Nil
Competency field	<i>OHC</i>
Unit sector	<i>Health</i>
Elements	Performance Criteria
Elements describe the essential outcomes	Performance criteria describe the performance needed to demonstrate achievement of the element.
1. Prepare for the application of fluoride varnish	<p>1.1. Check scope of own work role to ensure it includes application of fluoride varnish as advised by an authorised oral health practitioner in an individualised oral health care plan.</p> <p>1.2. Confirm the patient oral health care plan, developed by an oral health practitioner, specifically includes the</p>

	<p>application of fluoride varnish and that there are no contraindications to this procedure.</p> <p>1.3. Explain fluoride varnish application procedure to patient and family or carer and check their understanding of the benefits of fluoride varnish, need for regular applications, and the risks associated with fluoride varnish.</p> <p>1.4. Explain the advantages and disadvantages of fluoride varnish over other procedures.</p> <p>1.5. Confirm patient consent.</p> <p>1.6. Prepare fluoride varnish kit and personal protective equipment (PPE) as required by patient, practitioner and self.</p>
<p>2. Apply fluoride varnish to teeth</p>	<p>2.1. Position the patient for safety and comfort.</p> <p>2.2. Use PPE in accordance with infection control policies and procedures throughout procedure.</p> <p>2.3. Prepare teeth for fluoride varnish application in accordance with product instructions and application protocols.</p> <p>2.4. Dispense appropriate amount of fluoride varnish.</p> <p>2.5. Apply fluoride varnish in correct manner with applicator to teeth as recommended in the oral health care plan.</p>
<p>3. Provide information to patient and family or carer about post-application advice and follow up requirements.</p>	<p>3.1. Advise patient, family or carer of the importance of following instructions and recommended guidelines for eating, drinking fluids and brushing and cleaning teeth following fluoride varnish application.</p> <p>3.2. Inform patient and family or carer of any expected short-term changes in tooth appearance or sensation, including colour, feel or taste.</p> <p>3.3. Provide post-application information to patient and family or carer in both verbal and written or picture</p>

	<p>formats as required by their individual needs or preferences.</p> <p>3.4. Ensure patient and family or carer understand oral health practitioner's recommended schedule for ongoing application in line with their individualised oral health care plan.</p>
--	---

4. Record and document information about the application	<p>4.1. Record and document details of the application undertaken, information provided and any concerns arising during contact with patient and family or carer.</p> <p>4.2. Use relevant technology to complete documentation according to organisational policies and procedures.</p>
--	--

Foundation skills

The foundation skills essential to performance of this unit, but not explicit in the performance criteria are listed here, along with a brief context statement.

<i>Skill</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Reading skills to:</i>	review individualised oral health care plans
<i>Writing skills to:</i>	complete documentation
<i>Oral communication skills to:</i>	interact with patients and confirm understanding
<i>Numeracy skills to:</i>	apply fluoride varnish
<i>Learning skills to:</i>	use relevant technology

Assessment requirements

Performance evidence	<p>The candidate must demonstrate the ability to complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the job role. There must be evidence that the candidate has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • apply fluoride varnish safely and effectively to at least five people in line with product guidelines, jurisdictional legislation and regulation relating to
-----------------------------	---

	<p>fluoride schedule, supply, authorisation and disposal, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ preparing self and the patient using personal protective equipment against risks associated with the use of fluoride varnish ○ identifying and responding to risks associated with applying fluoride varnish.
<p>Knowledge evidence</p>	<p>The candidate must demonstrate essential knowledge required to effectively complete tasks outlined in elements and performance criteria of this unit, manage tasks and manage contingencies in the context of the work role. This includes knowledge of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • work health and safety (WHS) issues and procedures, including those related to manual handling of fluoride varnish and personal safety and security risks associated with provision of fluoride varnish application • current Australian Dental Association infection prevention and control and record keeping guidelines • National and State or Territory infection control guidelines and procedures • organisational procedures for documentation and reporting • correct use of personal protective equipment • own work role and responsibilities in the application of fluoride varnish • principles and practices of confidentiality, privacy and consent of fluoride treatment • characteristics and uses of fluoride varnish including:

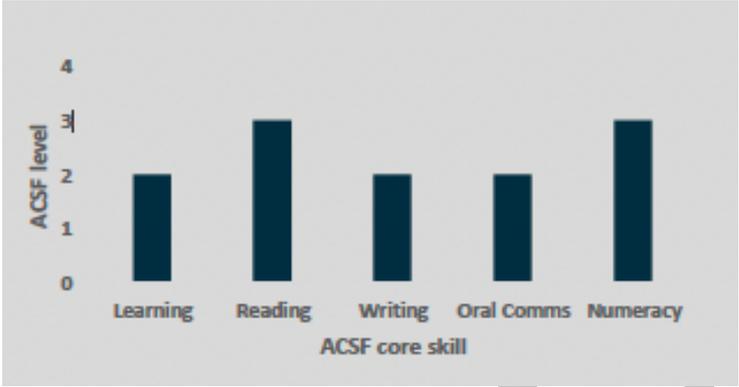
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ topical fluoride therapy for enamel, dentine or cementum of tooth○ non-permanent, but adherent nature to stay in contact with tooth surface for several hours○ use in prevention of decay○ use in remineralising tooth surface○ use in treating dentine hypersensitivity○ risks associated with fluoride varnish● accessibility to services, including availability of private and public oral health services and eligibility for services● awareness of relevant jurisdictional legislation and regulation relating to fluoride, including schedule, supply, authorisation and disposal● processes for correct application of fluoride varnish:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ keeping client mouth open○ maintaining moisture control○ retracting lip and cheek, wiping and applying a thin layer of varnish to the teeth as prescribed in the oral health care plan○ ensuring varnish is applied without contact with other tissues○ never dispensing product in excess to that stated in the oral health care plan● techniques for reflecting on own level of skills and knowledge to achieve desirable outcomes and maintain own capabilities● basic anatomy and physiology underpinning oral health and hygiene● causes and prevention of common dental diseases especially dental caries
--	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• common equipment utilised in the application of fluoride• effective self-care practices for oral health, including cause, control and prevention of dental plaque• emergency procedures that may be required during the application of fluoride varnish• factors that impact on oral health, including:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ abuse including neglect of oral health needs○ access to dental and health services○ alcohol, licit and illicit drugs and substances over the counter and herbal treatments○ bacteria in dental plaque○ correct infant feeding practices○ damage from habitual grinding of teeth○ diet and nutrition, including fluids and excessive intake of sugar○ fluoride○ general health and wellbeing○ immunosuppressant conditions, HIV, chemotherapy and radiation○ injury to mouth, including from a seizure○ medical history○ oral piercings○ patient oral health information○ presence of plaque and calculus○ psychological issues, including fear of being seen without dentures or persisting with ill-fitting dentures for satisfaction of others○ salivary function○ smoking○ social and cultural determinants of health○ susceptible tooth surfaces
--	---

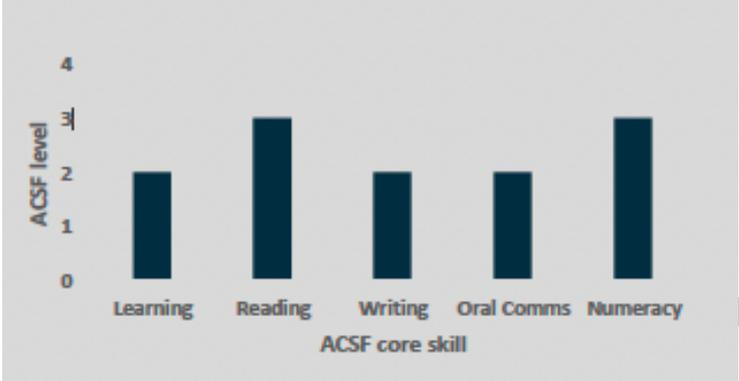
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ transmission of bacteria particularly from family or carer to child ○ teeth misalignment causing trauma to teeth ○ trauma to the mouth as a result of an accident ● evaluation criteria for monitoring effectiveness of fluoride varnish application program ● role of significant others in supporting patient's oral health care needs ● safe application of fluoride varnish ● safe storage of products ● relationship between oral health and general health
<p>Assessment conditions</p>	<p>Skills must be demonstrated in the workplace with the addition of simulations and scenarios where the full range of contexts and situations cannot be provided in the workplace or may occur only rarely.</p> <p>The following aspect of the performance evidence must have been demonstrated using simulation prior to demonstration in the workplace or with members of the general public.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● apply fluoride varnish safely and effectively. <p>Note: Where State or Territory legislation prevents practice in the workplace, simulated assessment environments may be used in place of workplace assessment.</p> <p>Assessment must ensure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● access to suitable equipment and resources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ oral hygiene self-care aids and technique ○ placebo fluoride varnish ○ specialised equipment utilised in the application of fluoride varnish <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● access to current Australian Dental Association and Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) guidelines and practice standards ● access to current Dental Board of Australia (DBA) infection control and record keeping guidelines ● access to National and State or Territory infection control guidelines and procedures ● modelling of industry operating conditions including access to people for simulations and scenarios in oral health care work <p>Assessors must satisfy the Standards for Registered Training Organisations (RTO's) requirements for assessors</p>
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register -</p> <p>https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>

Skill Set code	HLTSS000XX									
Skill Set Title	Dental Radiography Skill Set									
Skill Set Mapping	Nil									
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><i>Release</i></th> <th><i>Comments</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><i>Minor change to application</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLTSS00072 Dental Radiography Skill Set. New skill set.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>	3	<i>Minor change to application</i>	2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.	1	HLTSS00072 Dental Radiography Skill Set. New skill set.
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>									
3	<i>Minor change to application</i>									
2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.									
1	HLTSS00072 Dental Radiography Skill Set. New skill set.									
Skill Set description	<p>This skill set provides a set of skills for assisting with dental radiography work.</p> <p>The skills in this skill set must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>									
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	<p>No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.</p> <p>Dental radiography work must only be performed by a person with a radiation user licence granted by the relevant State/Territory regulatory authority under legislation.</p>									
Pathways information	Achievement of these units provides credit towards HLT45021 Certificate IV in Dental Assisting									
Entry requirements	Nil									

<p>Foundation skills outcomes</p>	<p>The foundation skills outcomes implicit in this skill set are outlined in the below bar chart,</p>  <table border="1"> <caption>ACSF Core Skills and Levels</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>ACSF core skill</th> <th>ACSF level</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Learning</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reading</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Writing</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Oral Comms</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Numeracy</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</p>	ACSF core skill	ACSF level	Learning	2	Reading	3	Writing	2	Oral Comms	2	Numeracy	3
ACSF core skill	ACSF level												
Learning	2												
Reading	3												
Writing	2												
Oral Comms	2												
Numeracy	3												
<p>Skill set requirements</p>	<p>HLTDEN021 Apply the principles of radiation biology and protection in dental practice</p> <p>HLTDEN022 Prepare to expose a prescribed dental radiographic image</p> <p>HLTDEN023 Produce a prescribed dental radiographic image</p>												
<p>Links</p>	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>												

Skill Set code	HLTSS000XX									
Skill Set Title	Oral Health Care Skill Set									
Skill Set Mapping	Nil									
Modification history	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><i>Release</i></th> <th><i>Comments</i></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><i>Minor change to application</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>HLTSS00073 Oral Health Care Skill Set. New skill set.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>	3	<i>Minor change to application</i>	2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.	1	HLTSS00073 Oral Health Care Skill Set. New skill set.
<i>Release</i>	<i>Comments</i>									
3	<i>Minor change to application</i>									
2	Minor corrections to formatting to improve readability. Equivalent outcomes.									
1	HLTSS00073 Oral Health Care Skill Set. New skill set.									
Skill Set description	<p>This skill set provides a set of skills for promoting good oral health to clients and groups through the provision of visual oral health checks, and educational and motivational information including the demonstration of oral hygiene practices and techniques.</p> <p>The skills in this skill set must be applied in accordance with Commonwealth and State/Territory legislation, Australian Standards and industry codes of practice.</p>									
Legislative/ Licensing/Regulatory Requirements	No licensing, legislative or certification requirements apply to this unit at the time of publication.									
Pathways information	<i>Achievement of these units provides credit towards a range of qualifications in the HLT Health Training Package and CHC Community Services Training Package.</i>									

Entry requirements	Nil
Foundation skills outcomes	<p>The foundation skills outcomes implicit in this skill set are outlined in the below bar chart,</p>  <p>Digital literacy outcomes may be included in the Companion Volume Implementation Guide as appropriate.</p>
Skill set requirements	<p>HLTOHC007 Recognise and respond to oral health issues</p> <p>HLTOHC008 Inform and support patients and groups about oral health</p> <p>HLTOHC011 Apply fluoride varnish</p>
Links	<p>Companion volumes, including implementation guides, are found on the national training register - https://training.gov.au/training/details/HLT/summary</p>